



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

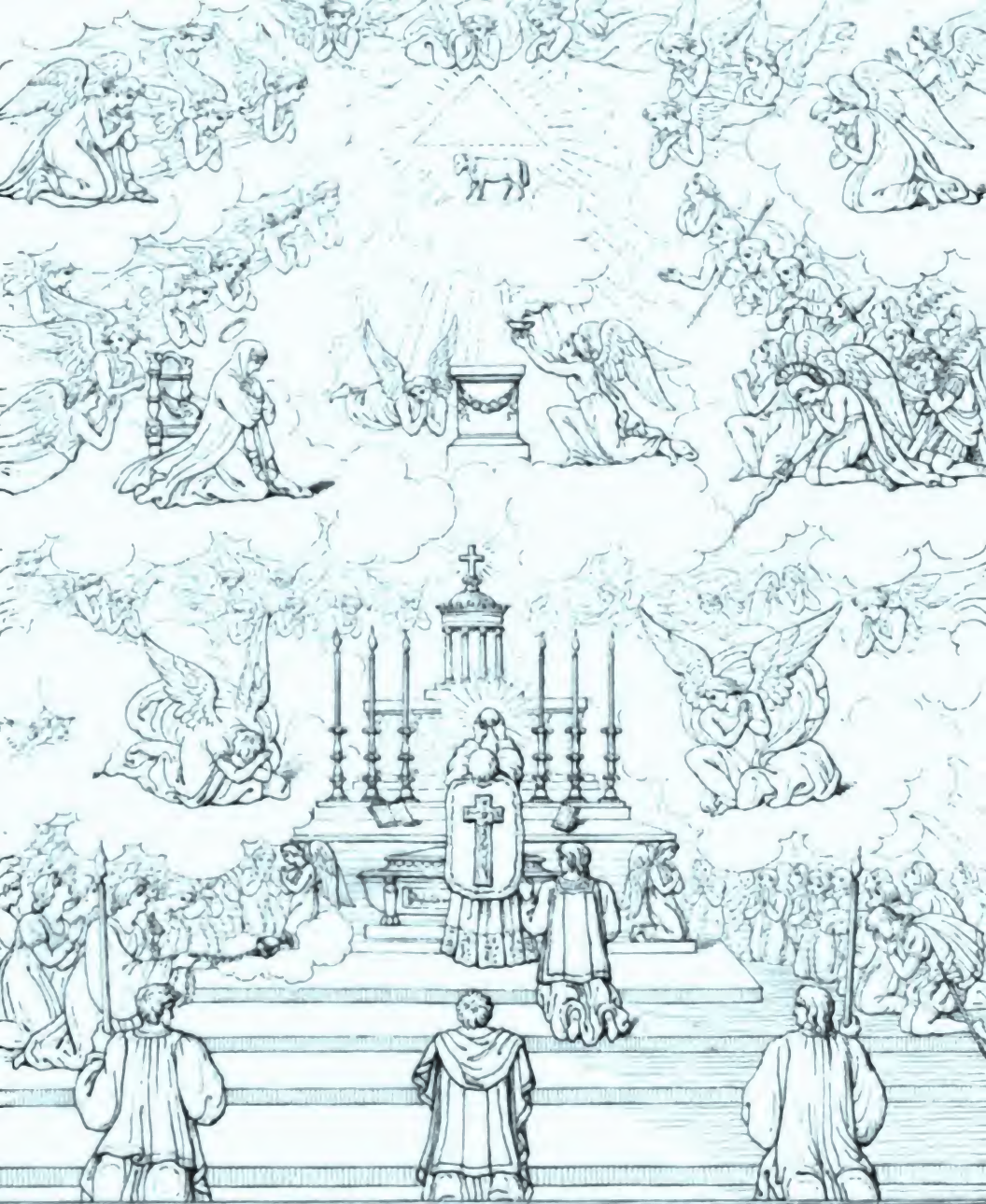
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



# *Hierurgia*

Daniel Rock



600042423L

33.

723.









600042423L

33.

723.





600042423L

33.

723.





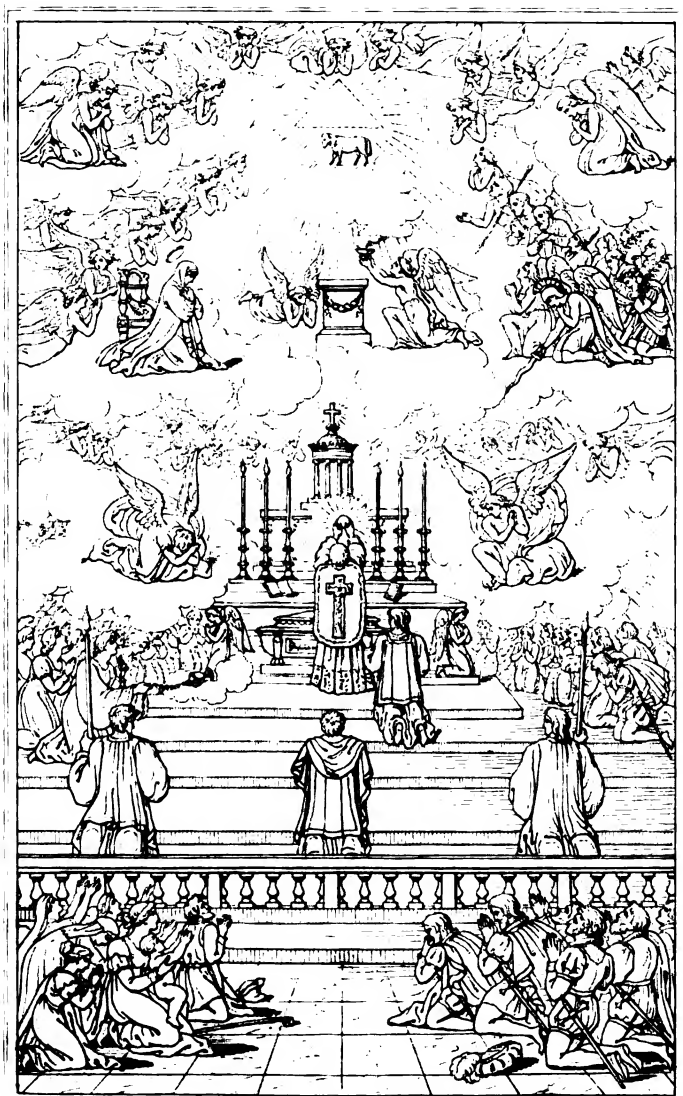












Cd de Châtillon d

H. Moses d

London Printed by J. Joseph Baskett at the Press of the Society of the Holy Spirit



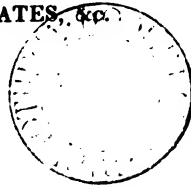
4

**HIERURGIA;**  
**OR THE**  
**HOLY SACRIFICE OF THE MASS,**  
**WITH**  
**NOTES AND DISSERTATIONS**  
**ELUCIDATING**  
**ITS DOCTRINES AND CEREMONIES,**  
**AND**  
**NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIVE PLATES, &c.**  
**IN TWO PARTS.**  

---

**BY DANIEL ROCK, D.D.**  

---



**VOL. I.**

**LONDON:**  
**JOSEPH BOOKER, NEW BOND STREET.**

**MDCCCLXXXIII.**

723.

---

**C. Richards, Printer, 100, St. Martin's-lane, Charing-cross.**

TO  
**JOHN XVI. EARL OF SHREWSBURY,**  
**EARL OF WATERFORD AND WEXFORD,**  
**HEREDITARY LORD HIGH STEWARD OF IRELAND,**  
*&c. &c. &c.*

**THESE VOLUMES ARE INSCRIBED,**  
**AS A TESTIMONY OF THE EDIFICATION DERIVED FROM A LONG AND NEAR**  
**INSPECTION OF THOSE NUMEROUS VIRTUES WHICH SANCTIFY HIM AS**  
**A CHRISTIAN, EXALT HIM AS A NOBLEMAN, AND ENDEAR HIM TO**  
**EVERY ONE WHO HAS THE HAPPINESS OF HIS ACQUAINT-**  
**ANCE; AND TO ERECT A MONUMENT OF THE GRATE-**  
**FUL, AND OF THE RESPECTFUL BUT SINCERE**  
**ATTACHMENT OF THEIR AUTHOR,**

**DANIEL ROCK, D.D.**

*ALTON TOWERS,*  
*March 18, 1833.*





## PREFATORY NOTICE.

---

OF the more intelligent and inquiring amongst our Protestant fellow-countrymen, several have occasionally manifested a desire to see a manual which not only contained the prayers, but explained the ceremonies, and elucidated the doctrine, of the Mass. The purport of these pages is to fill up such a deficiency in the number of those well-composed and highly useful expositions of Catholic doctrine, which we already possess.

The work is divided into two parts ; the first of which embraces the Ordinary of the Mass, in Latin and in English, to which are appended notes explanatory of the ceremonies and the ritual of the Liturgy. The second part contains dissertations on the doctrine of the Eucharist, as a sacrifice, and a sacrament ; on the Invocation of Saints ; on Purgatory ; on Images ; on Ceremonies ; on the Vestments, and the history of their origin and gradual change to their present form ; and on the several points of ritual and disciplinary observance.

The Roman Catacombs are precious and highly interesting to every true believer in the Gospel, from their having been the burial-place of the holy martyrs and primitive Christians,—from their still exhibiting the very subterraneous chambers in which the earliest followers of Christ at Rome were accustomed to assemble on the Lord's day, in order to assist at, and partake of, the Eucharistic sacrifice,—and from furnishing a residence and refuge to the popes, the clergy, and the faithful in general, during more than twelve fiery persecutions. The Basilicæ erected by Constantine in the old capital of the Roman empire, and by his immediate successors and pious individuals, in the same city and in other parts of the Italian peninsula, are also highly valuable. United together, the catacombs and ancient churches of Rome and of Italy in general, constitute a wide and fertile field of monuments, both curiously interesting and serviceable alike to the theologian, the ecclesiastical antiquary and the artist. Over any part of this diversified region, the British reader has seldom, perhaps never, been conducted, while making those enquiries, and prosecuting those investigations, on litigated articles of doctrine and discipline, which in every other quarter have been directed in the most masterly and able manner, and display the fruits of long and toilsome research over a widely extended field of erudition. The author has broken up this new and prolific ground, and has not un-

frequently alleged an inscription from a martyr's tomb, to fortify his argument in vindication of some tenet of the ancient faith ; and produced a fresco-painting, or a piece of sculpture, from the subterranean chambers of the catacombs, and a mosaic from some ancient church, to explain the origin of our present sacerdotal vestments, or in illustration of the rites and ceremonies still practised at the celebration of our holy Liturgy. A repeated inspection of many of those venerable monuments, during a college-residence of almost seven delightful years, in the centre of Christianity, convinced the author of their inestimable value and importance, at the same time that it awakened a desire to study and investigate them. Such impressions were more deeply imprinted on his mind, at a second visit to Rome, in which he was indulged for the improvement of his health, during the winter of 1828-29, by the liberality of his kind and noble patron the Earl of Shrewsbury, who procured and placed at his disposal, during the composition of the present volumes, works not only highly interesting, but necessary, yet so expensive, as to be entirely beyond the author's means of purchase.

Knowing, from self-experience, that the *oculus fidelis*,—the faithful eye—can collect much more information by a single glance at the drawing of a pictorial or sculptured monument of antiquity,

than from perusing whole chapters taken up with the most minute and elaborate descriptions of it, he was determined to enrich his labours with copies of those monuments referred to in the text, or accompanying notes. The reader will, therefore, find these pages embellished with several copper-plate and wood engravings, executed by Mr. Moses, and other artists of the first order in the respective branches of their profession, and whom the author must congratulate on the able manner in which they have acquitted themselves of the task confided to their care.

The reader will, no doubt, detect the absence of true perspective,—remark several obvious faults in the drawing of the human figure,—and notice other seeming deficiencies in some at least of the engravings which are scattered through these volumes. He should, however, bear in mind, that of these graphic illustrations of the text, many were selected from monuments executed at a period when painting and sculpture, together with the sister-arts and sciences, were sinking into, or emerging from, that night of ignorance which darkened Europe during the middle ages.\* As these

---

\* No admirer of the Fine Arts should be without the talented and elaborate works of D'Agincourt and Cicognara. The learned Frenchman employed thirty years in the compilation of his '*Histoire de l'Art par les Monumens, depuis sa Décadence au 4ème*

monuments were produced to elucidate an ancient custom, or to corroborate some argument, by noticing the accordance in Catholic belief at the present moment, with that of early times, the author considered it a religious duty to exhibit as accurate transcripts of them as he could possibly procure. Hence he solicited those friends who so kindly furnished him with tracings and copies of these ancient monuments, and directed the artists who engraved them, to be as minutely faithful in their respective delineations, and transcribe them

---

*siècle, jusqu'à son renouvellement au 16ème ;* and the patriotic Italian has eloquently advanced the claims of his own Italy as the nurse of all the family of the Arts, in his '*Storia della Scultura dal suo Risorgimento in Italia fino al secolo di Canova.*' How deeply it is to be regretted that no Englishman has hitherto been stimulated by the patriotism of Cicognara, or warmed by a love for the Arts, similar to that which quickened D'Agincourt, to achieve for Great Britain what these authors, with small fortunes and no patronage, have done for Italy—for Europe. Materials are abundant; since not only are our native productions, especially from the tenth century, most numerous in architecture, sculpture, and painting in illuminated MSS., but many of them still exist in the highest state of preservation. Nothing is wanting, but some individual, with sufficient abilities and the necessary acquirements, with the will to collect and arrange those splendid national monuments, to vindicate the honour of Britain, and prove the ancient success with which she cultivated the Arts, at least from the tenth up to the commencement of the sixteenth century, and hence demonstrate her actual capability of recovering her former glory, and adding to it new splendours, if animated to such a meritorious enterprise by due encouragement.



with every fault, however glaring. The object, in this instance, was not to improve nor decorate, but to render fac-similes of those curious originals which, notwithstanding their defects, are interesting to the artist and antiquary.

The author cannot allow the present occasion to pass away without making suitable acknowledgments to the publisher of these volumes, for that solicitude and attention which he manifested during the printing of them. The author therefore avails himself of this opportunity of offering to Mr. Booker, of New Bond Street, his best thanks, not only for his attention and immediate acquiescence to every one of the suggestions for the printing and embellishment of this work; but for the ready zeal and prompt exactitude with which he carried them into effect. For the handsome specimen of typography, and beautiful style in which the plates and illustrations are executed, the public are indebted to Mr. Booker, who, in taking upon himself the responsibility of publishing the present volumes, spared no expense in carrying them through the press.

# CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

---

## PART THE FIRST.

	<i>Page</i>
Sprinkling of the Holy water - - - - -	1
Ordinary of the Mass - - - - -	4
Benediction with the blessed Sacrament after Mass - -	64
Notes on the Rubrics - - - - -	71

---

## PART THE SECOND.

### CHAPTER. I.

#### SECT. I.

##### ON SACRIFICE IN GENERAL.

1. The necessity of interior and exterior worship. 2. Sacrifice offered from the beginning of the world. 3. What sacrifice is. 4. The four ends of sacrifice. 5. The legal sacrifices were of no avail when unconnected with the future death of the Redeemer. 6. A new sacrifice was necessary. 7. The sacrifice of the Cross a true sacrifice. 8. All the ancient sacrifices comprehended in it. 9. The unbloody sacrifice of the New Law - - - - - p. 167

#### SECTION II.

##### THE MASS A SACRIFICE.

10. The Mass a true sacrifice. 11. Sacrifice of Melchisedech. 12. The sacrifice of Melchisedech elucidated by the Fathers. 13. Illustrated by an ancient Mosaic at Ravenna. 14. The Paschal Lamb a figure of the sacrifice of the Mass. 15. Accomplishment of the prophecy of Malachias in the sacrifice of the Mass. 16. Christ announces a new sacrifice. 17. The sacrifice of the Mass proved from St. Paul - - - - - p. 177

## SECTION III.

## ON THE REAL PRESENCE.

18. The Real Presence. 19. The promise made by Christ that he would give us his flesh and blood to eat and drink. 20. Objection answered. 21. Proof from the Institution. Objections answered. 22. The Real Presence proved from St. Paul. 23. Taught by the rest of the Apostles. 24. All the ancient Liturgies attest the Real Presence - - - - - p. 201

## SECTION IV.

## TRANSUBSTANTIATION.

25. What is meant by the term. 26. Transubstantiation proved from Scripture. 27. Attested by St. Cyril. 28. Illustrated by a practice of the modern Greek Church. Objections answered. 29. From St. Paul. 30. Objection of the term Transubstantiation. 31. Recapitulation - - - - - p. 237

## CHAPTER II.

## SECT. I.

## HISTORY OF THE MASS.

1. Christ said the first Mass. 2. Christ directed the Apostles to celebrate Mass. 3. The Apostles said Mass. 4. A ceremonial instituted by the Apostles for offering up Mass. 5. Attested by St. John. 6. The remarks of some Protestants noticed. 7. The Liturgy indicated by St. Ignatius. 8. Noticed by Pliny. 9. Described by St. Justin - - - - - p. 259

## SECTION II.

## LAY COMMUNION.

10. Belief of the Church on Lay Communion. 11. Communion under one kind of Apostolic institution. 12. When and why generally adopted by the Latin Church. 13. Agreeable to Scripture. 14. Objection from Scripture answered. 15. Unleavened bread used at the Last Supper. 16. Unleavened bread used by

the Latin Church ; by the Maronites, and Armenians. 17. The sacrament hinted at in the Apocalypse. 18. The circular form of the Host very ancient - - - - - p. 273

## CHAPTER III.

### ON THE TERM MASS.

1. Meaning of the word Mass. 2. Origin of it. 3. The antiquity of its use - - - - - p. 297

## CHAPTER IV.

### ON THE USE OF LATIN AT MASS.

1. An unknown tongue used in the Jewish Temple. 2. Not blamed by Christ, who prayed in an unknown tongue. 3. Reasons why the Catholic Church uses Latin at Mass. 4. The people not necessarily obliged to understand the language of the Mass. 5. Latin at Mass no-wise prejudicial to the people. 6. Greeks, Syrians, Copts, and Armenians, use an unknown tongue at Mass. 7. Objection answered. 8. Stricture on the Protestant version of the words of St. Paul - - - p. 307

## CHAPTER V.

### ON THE INVOCATION OF SAINTS AND ANGELS.

1. Immeasurable distance between the worship given to God, and the reverence shown to the Saints. 2. Religious respect may be rendered to Saints and Angels. 3. The Angels and Saints make intercession for men. 4. Inferred from the communion of Saints in the Apostles' Creed. 5. From the charity which animates the Saints. 6. The Invocation of Angels proved from Scripture ; from the Psalms ; from Genesis ; from the Apocalypse. 7. The Invocation of Saints proved from Scripture. 8. Holy men have, even in this life, been invoked by others. 9.

Invocation of Saints in the primitive Church proved from ancient inscriptions. 10. Invocation of Saints in the Anglo-Saxon Church. 11. Contained in all the Liturgies. 12. Objections answered. 13. Charity engages the Saints to pray for us. 14. They have the power of doing it. 15. They know what passes upon earth. 16. Their intercession not derogatory to the mediatorship of Christ. 17. Manner of addressing God through the Saints. 18. Similarity of Catholic and Protestant prayers. 19. Inconsistency of an objection - - - - *p.* 323

---

## INDEX OF PLATES AND WOOD-CUTS.

---

### VOL. I.

---

1. *Copper-plate.*—THE ELEVATION. *To be placed as frontispiece to Vol. i.*

The lower part represents the Elevation of the Host, immediately after it has been consecrated. The upper portion of the engraving was suggested by various passages in the Apocalypse, respecting the mystic sacrifice of the Lamb, which St. John saw in vision.

The beautiful passage extracted from the writings of the eloquent St. John Chrysostom, A.D. 398, which may be found at p. 142, will furnish an appropriate elucidation of the subject of this engraving.

2. *Copper-plate.*—THE CRUCIFIXION. *To be placed to face p. 38.*

After Michael Angelo. The original design is in the possession of the reigning prince of Lucca, and deposited in the ducal palace of that city.

3. *Wood-cut.* Figure of Melchisedech, from an ancient mosaic in the Church of St. Vitalis at Ravenna, p. 186.

4. *Wood-cut.* The painting which usually ornaments the ceiling over the altar, in Greek churches, p. 243.

During the time that M. de Nointel was ambassador of France at the Porte, he visited many of the churches belonging to the Greeks. Excepting in those which were extremely poor, he invariably observed a lamp suspended and burning before the place in which the blessed Sacrament was deposited. His attention was attracted by certain paintings representing sometimes an altar on which lay an open volume exhibiting these

words: 'Take eat; this is my body;' at other times, a chalice, out of which Jesus Christ was issuing, under the form of a little infant, having the book of the Gospels opened, and showing the words of consecration on the right, and on the left the Eucharistic bread. In some churches, the ambassador observed, over the altar, a painting in which there appeared the chalice, the Host, and the book of the Gospels, with figures on both sides, each holding in his hand a scroll, on which was written, 'O God, our God, who hast sent us thy celestial bread which is the nourishment of the world.' The pictures that are to be more generally seen, are those which represent angels and saints adoring the Host made in the form of a human figure, and the chalice on an altar.—*Le Brun. tom. vi. p. 660.*

5. *Two Woodcuts.* Arculæ, or little boxes, used in the first ages of the Church, by the faithful, for carrying home the blessed Eucharist after Mass, *p. 273.*
  6. *Copper-plate.* The various forms of the Host, or Eucharistic bread. *To face p. 294.* 1. Form of the Eucharistic bread in the Latin Church. 2. Its form in the Greek Church. Corban, or Eucharistic bread used by the Copts.
-

## THE LITURGY OF THE MASS.

---

### SPRINKLING OF THE HOLY WATER.<sup>(1)</sup>

---

¶ *Before Solemn Mass on Sundays, one of the following Anthems is sung, according to the time of the year.*

#### COMMON ANTHEM.

Ps. L. v. ix. Asperges  
me Domine hyssopo, et  
mundabor: lavabis me,  
et super nivem dealba-  
bor.

Ps. L. v. ix. Thou shalt  
sprinkle me, O Lord,  
with hyssop,<sup>(2)</sup> and I  
shall be cleansed: thou  
shalt wash me, and I  
shall be made whiter  
than snow.

Ps. L. v. iii. Miserere  
mei, Deus, secundum  
magnam misericordiam  
tuam.

Ps. L. v. iii. Have mer-  
cy on me, O God, ac-  
cording to thy great  
mercy.

B



V. Gloria Patri, et  
Filio, et Spiritui Sancto.

V. Glory be to the  
Father, and to the Son,  
and to the Holy Ghost.

R. Sicut erat in prin-  
cipio, et nunc, et sem-  
per, et in sæcula sæcu-  
lorum. Amen.

R. As it was in the  
beginning, is now, and  
ever shall be, world  
without end. Amen.

*Ant.* Asperges me, &c.

*Ant.* Thou shalt  
sprinkle me, &c.

¶ *The Priest being returned to the foot of the  
Altar says ;*

V. Ostende nobis  
Domine misericordiam  
tuam.

V. Show us, O Lord,  
thy mercy.

R. Et salutare tuum  
da nobis.

R. And grant us thy  
salvation.

V. Domine exaudi  
orationem meam.

V. O Lord, hear my  
prayer.

R. Et clamor meus  
ad te veniat.

R. And let my cry  
come unto thee.

V. Dominus vobis-  
cum.

V. The Lord be with  
you.

R. Et cum spiritu  
tuo.

R. And with thy  
spirit.

*Oremus:*

*Let us pray:*

Exaudi nos, Domine  
sancte, Pater omnipo-  
tens, æterne Deus; et  
mittere digneris sanc-

Hear us, O Holy  
Lord, Almighty Father,  
eternal God! and vouch-  
safe to send thy holy

tum Angelum tuum de Angel from heaven, to  
 cœlis, qui custodiat, fo- guard, cherish, protect,  
 veat, protegat, visitet, visit, and defend, all  
 atque defendat omnes who are assembled in  
 habitantes in hoc habi- this place. Through  
 taculo. Per Christum Jesus Christ our Lord.  
 Dominum nostrum.

R. Amen.

R. Amen.

¶ *From Easter to Whitsunday, inclusively, in-  
 stead of the foregoing Anthem, (Asperges, &c.)  
 the following is sung, and Alleluia are added  
 to the V. (Ostende nobis) and to its R. (Et Salu-  
 tare, &c.)*

#### ANTHEM.

Ezech. c. XLVII. Vidi	Ezech. c. XLVII. I saw
aquam egredientem de	water flowing from the
templo a latere dextero,	right side of the temple,
Alleluia: et omnes ad	Alleluia: and all to whom
quos pervenit aqua is-	that water came, were
ta, salvi facti sunt, et	saved, and they shall
dicent, Alleluia.	say, Alleluia.

Ps. Confitemini Domi-	Ps. Give praise to
no, quoniam bonus: quo-	the Lord, for he is good,
niam in sæculum miseri-	for his mercy endureth
cordia ejus. Gloria, &c.	for ever. Glory, &c.

THE ORDINARY OF THE MASS.<sup>(3)</sup>

¶ *Being arrived at the foot of the Altar, and having made a reverence to the Crucifix,<sup>(4)</sup> the Priest commences Mass by making the sign of the Cross,<sup>(5)</sup> and saying the following Psalm.*

¶ *At Solemn High Mass,<sup>(6)</sup> the Priest is accompanied by a Deacon and Sub-deacon. At High Mass, as celebrated in country congregations, and at Low Mass, he is attended by Lay individuals, who, in the language of the Church, are called Acolytes.<sup>(7)</sup>*

In nomine Patris, ✠  
et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen.

*Antiphona.* Introibo  
ad altare Dei.

R. Ad Deum, qui lætificat  
juventutem meam.

Ps. XLII. Judica me,  
Deus, et discerne causam  
meam de gente non sancta:  
ab homine iniquo et doloso erue me.

R. Quia tu es, Deus,  
fortitudo mea: quare me

In the name of the  
Father,<sup>(8)</sup> ✠ and of the  
Son, and of the Holy  
Ghost. Amen.

*Antiphon.*<sup>(9)</sup> I will go  
in to the altar of God.

R. To God who giveth  
joy to my youth.

Ps. XLII.<sup>(10)</sup> Judge me,  
O God, and distinguish  
my cause from the nation  
that is not holy, deliver  
me from the unjust and  
deceitful man.

R. For thou art, God,  
my strength: why hast

repulisti? et quare tristis  
incedo dum affligit me  
inimicus?

P. Emitte lucem tu-  
am, et veritatem tuam:  
ipsa me deduxerunt et  
adduxerunt in montem  
sanctum tuum, et in  
tabernacula tua.

R. Et introibo ad alta-  
re Dei: ad Deum qui læ-  
tificat juventutem me-  
am.

P. Confitebor tibi in  
cithara, Deus; Deus  
meus: quare tristis es  
anima mea? et quare  
conturbas me?

R. Spera in Deo quo-  
niam adhuc confitebor  
illi: salutare vultûs mei,  
et Deus meus.

P. Gloria Patri, et  
Filio, et Spiritui Sancto.

R. Sicut erat in prin-  
cipio, et nunc, et sem-

thou cast me off? and  
why do I go sorrowful  
whilst the enemy af-  
flicteth me?

P. Send forth thy  
light and thy truth:  
they have conducted me,  
and brought me unto  
thy holy hill, and into  
thy tabernacles.

R. And I will go in  
to the altar of God; to  
God who giveth joy to  
my youth.

P. To thee, O God,  
my God, I will give  
praise upon the harp:  
why art thou sad, O my  
soul? and why dost thou  
disquiet me?

R. Hope in God, for  
I will still give praise  
to him: the salvation  
of my countenance, and  
my God.

P. Glory be to the  
Father, and to the Son,  
and to the Holy Ghost.

R. As it was in the  
beginning, is now, and

per, et in sæcula sæculorum. Amen.

P. Introibo ad altare Dei.

R. Ad Deum qui lætificat juventutem meam.

P. Adjutorium ✠ nostrum in nomine Domini.

R. Qui fecit cælum et terram.

ever shall be, world without end. Amen.<sup>(11)</sup>

P. I will go in to the Altar of God.

R. To God who giveth joy to my youth.

P. May our help ✠ be in the name of the Lord.

R. Who made heaven and earth.

¶ *Inclining his head<sup>(12)</sup> profoundly, the Priest says:*

Confiteor Deo omnipotenti, beatæ Mariæ semper Virgini, beato Michaeli Archangelo; beato Joanni Baptistæ, sanctis apostolis Petro et Paulo, omnibus sanctis, et vobis fratres: quia peccavi nimis cogitatione, verbo, et opere, (*Per-cutit sibi pectus ter, dicens*) meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ maximâ culpâ. Ideo precor beatam Mariam semper Virginem, beatum Michaelem Archangelum, beatum Jo-

I confess to Almighty God, to the blessed Mary, ever a virgin, to blessed Michael the Archangel, to blessed John the Baptist, to the holy apostles Peter and Paul, to all the saints, and to you, brethren, that I have sinned exceedingly in thought, word, and deed, (*Here he strikes his breast thrice,*<sup>(13)</sup> through my fault, through my fault, through my most grievous fault. Therefore I beseech the blessed Mary, ever a Vir-

annem Baptistam, sanctos apostolos Petrum, et Paulum, omnes sanctos, et vos fratres, orare pro me ad Dominum Deum nostrum.

R. Misereatur tui omnipotens Deus, et dimissis peccatis tuis, perducatur te ad vitam æternam.

P. Amen.

gin,<sup>(14)</sup> blessed Michael the Archangel,<sup>(15)</sup> blessed John the Baptist,<sup>(16)</sup> the holy apostles Peter and Paul,<sup>(17)</sup> and all the Saints,<sup>(18)</sup> and you, brethren,<sup>(19)</sup> to pray to the Lord our God for me.<sup>(20)</sup>

R. May Almighty God be merciful unto thee, and forgiving thee thy sins, bring thee to everlasting life.

P. Amen.

¶ *At solemn High Mass, the Deacon and Subdeacon, and, at other Masses, the Acolytes, repeat the Confiteor Deo omnipotenti, &c. (I confess to Almighty God, &c.) with this sole variation, that they substitute "et tibi Pater," "et te Pater," ("thee Father,") in place of "Vobis Fratres," "et vos Fratres," ("You brethren.")*

P. Misereatur vestri omnipotens Deus, et dimissis peccatis vestris, perducatur vos ad vitam æternam.

R. Amen.

P. Indulgentiam ✠ absolutionem, et remis-

P. May Almighty God be merciful unto you, and, forgiving you your sins, bring you to life everlasting.

R. Amen.

P. May the Almighty and merciful Lord grant

sionem peccatorum nostrorum, tribuat nobis, omnipotens, et misericors Dominus.

R. Amen.

P. Deus tu conversus vivificabis nos.

R. Et plebs tua lætabitur in te.

P. Ostende nobis Domine, misericordiam tuam.

R. Et salutare tuum da nobis.

P. Domine, exaudi orationem meam.

R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.

P. Dominus vobiscum.

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

us pardon,† absolution, and remission of our sins.

R. Amen.

P. Turn to us, O God, and thou wilt enliven us.

R. And thy people will rejoice in thee.

P. Show us, O Lord, thy mercy.

R. And grant us thy salvation.

P. O Lord, hear my prayer.

R. And let my cry come unto thee.

P. The Lord be with you.<sup>(21)</sup>

R. And with thy spirit.

¶ *Extending and then joining his hands, he says :*

Oremus :

Let us pray :

¶ *In ascending the steps of the Altar, he recites to himself :*

Aufer a nobis quæsumus, Domine, iniquitates nostras, Domine, iniquitates, we beseech

tates nostras ; ut ad	thee, O Lord, that we may
sancta sanctorum, puris	be worthy to enter with
mereamur mentibus introire :	pure minds into the holy
per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.	of holies : through Christ
	our Lord. Amen.

¶ *Being arrived at the Altar, he bows down, and kisses it,<sup>(22)</sup> saying :*

Oramus te, Domine,	We beseech thee, O
per merita sanctorum	Lord, by the merits of thy
tuorum, quorum reliquiae	saints, whose relics are
hic sunt, et omnium	here, and of all the
sanctorum, ut indulgere	saints, that thou wouldst
digneris omnia peccata mea. Amen.	vouchsafe to forgive me
	all my sins. Amen.

¶ *Here, at High Mass, the Priest blesses the Incense<sup>(23)</sup> by making the sign of the cross over it, while he recites the following words :*

Ab illo bene ✠ dicaris,	Mayest thou be blessed ✠ by him in whose
in cujus honore cremaberis. Amen.	honour thou shalt be
	burned. Amen.

¶ *And afterwards fumes the Altar. Then turning to the book, or as it is called, the Missal, he makes the sign of the cross, and reads the Introit, which is different every day. The one inserted properly belongs to Trinity Sunday.*



## INTROIT. (24)

Benedicta † sit sancta Trinitas, atque indivisa Unitas: confitemur ei, quia fecit nobiscum misericordiam suam.

Ps. Domine, Dominus noster, quam admirabile est nomen tuum in universâ terrâ. Gloria Patri, et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto. Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in sæcula sæculorum. Amen.

Blessed † be the holy Trinity, and undivided Unity: we will praise him because he hath shown his mercy to us.

Ps. O Lord, our God, how wonderful is thy name over the utmost boundaries of the earth. Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost. As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end, Amen.

P. Kyrie Eleison. (25)

R. Kyrie Eleison.

P. Kyrie Eleison.

R. Christe Eleison.

P. Christe Eleison.

P. Lord have mercy upon us.

R. Lord have mercy upon us.

P. Lord have mercy upon us.

R. Christ have mercy upon us.

P. Christ have mercy upon us.

R. Christe Eleison.	R. Christ have mercy upon us.
P. Kyrie Eleison.	P. Lord have mercy upon us.
R. Kyrie Eleison.	R. Lord have mercy upon us.
P. Kyrie Eleison.	P. Lord have mercy upon us.

¶ *The Priest goes to the middle of the Altar, where, extending both his arms, he recites the Gloria in Excelsis, if it is to be said, and bows his head at the word Deo or God.*

GLORIA IN EXCELSIS.<sup>(95)</sup>

Gloria in excelsis Deo, et in terrâ pax homini- bus bonæ voluntatis. Laudamus te; benedici- mus te; adoramus te; glorificamus te. Gratias agimus tibi propter mag- nam gloriam tuam. Do- mine Deus, Rex cœles- tis, Deus Pater omnipo- tens. Domine Fili, uni- genite Jesu Christe; Do- mine Deus, Agnus Dei, Filius Patris, qui tollis peccata mundi, miserere nobis. Qui tollis pec-	Glory be to God on high, and, on earth, peace to men of good will. We praise thee; we bless thee; we adore thee; we glorify thee. We give thee thanks for thy great Glory, O Lord God, hea- venly King, God the Fa- ther Almighty. O Lord Jesus Christ, the only begotten Son. O Lord God, Lamb of God, Son of the Father, who tak- est away the sins of the world, have mercy on us.
---	--

cata mundi, suscipe	Who takest away the
deprecationem nostram.	sins of the world receive
Qui sedes ad dexteram	our prayer. Who sittest
Patris, miserere nobis.	at the right hand of the
Quoniam tu solus sanc-	Father, have mercy on
tus, Tu solus Dominus,	us. For thou only art
Tu solus altissimus Jesu	holy, Thou only art
Christe, cum Sancto Spi-	Lord, Thou only, O Je-
ritu, in gloria Dei Patris.	sus Christ, together with
Amen.	the Holy Ghost, art most
	high in the glory of God
	the Father. Amen.

¶ *Immediately after reciting the Gloria in excelsis at Low Mass; and at High Mass when the choir has concluded singing it, and he is returned from his seat; the Priest kisses the middle of the Altar, and turning with outstretched arms, proclaims this fervent wish;*<sup>(27)</sup>

P. Dominus vobis-	P. The Lord be with
cum.	you.
R. Et cum spiritu	R. And with thy
tuo.	spirit.

¶ *Afterwards the Priest turns to the Missal and with uplifted hands,<sup>(28)</sup> recites the Collect,<sup>(29)</sup> or Collects for the day, making a slight inclination of the head towards the crucifix<sup>(30)</sup> each time he says "Oremus," or pronounces the sacred name of Jesus.*

## COLLECT.

*Oremus.**Let us pray.*<sup>(31)</sup>

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, qui dedisti famulis tuis in confessione veræ fidei, æternæ Trinitatis gloriam agnoscere, et in potentia majestatis adorare unitatem: quæsumus, ut ejusdem fidei firmitate, ab omnibus semper muniamur adversis. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum filium tuum: Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate spiritus sancti Deus, per omnia sæcula sæculorum.

O Almighty and everlasting God, who hast given to thy servants to acknowledge in the confession of the true faith, the glory, and to adore in the power of thy majesty, the unity of the eternal Trinity: We beseech thee that, by the strength of this faith, we may be defended from all adversities. Through our Lord Jesus Christ thy Son: who liveth and reigneth with Thee in the unity of the Holy Ghost, one God, world without end.

R. Amen.

R. Amen.<sup>(32)</sup>

## OCCASIONAL COLLECTS.

¶ *From Candlemas-day, to Passion-Sunday, and from the third Sunday after Pentecost, till Advent, except on those Feasts which are called Doubles, or within Octaves; the following is the second Collect.*

*Oremus.*

A cunctis nos, quæsumus Domine, mentis et corporis defende periculis; et intercedente beata et gloriosa semper Virgine Dei genitrice Maria, cum beatis Apostolis tuis Petro et Paulo, atque beato N., et omnibus sanctis, salutem nobis tribue benignus et pacem; ut destructis adversitatibus et erroribus universis, Ecclesia tua secura tibi serviat libertate.

*Let us pray.*

Defend us, O Lord, we beseech thee, from all dangers of body and soul; and the blessed and glorious Mary the ever Virgin mother of God, together with thy blessed Apostles Peter and Paul, and the blessed N., and all the saints interceding for us; <sup>(33)</sup> grant us, in thy mercy, health and peace, that all adversities and errors being removed, thy Church may serve thee with a pure and undisturbed devotion.

¶ *From the first Sunday in Advent to Christmas-eve, after the Collect of the day, the following is said:—*

Deus, qui de beatæ Mariæ Virginis utero Verbum tuum, Angelo nuntiante, carnem suscipere voluisti: præsta supplicibus tuis; ut qui vere eam genitricem

O God who wast pleased that thy Word when the Angel delivered his message, should take flesh from the womb of the blessed Virgin Mary; give ear to our

Dei credimus, ejus apud te intercessionibus adjuvemur. humble petitions; and grant, that we who believe her to be truly the mother of God, may be assisted by her prayers.

¶ *To this is added a third, which is left to the choice of the Priest who in general selects either of these two.*

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, cujus spiritu totum corpus Ecclesiæ sanctificatur et regitur: exaudi nos pro universis ordinibus supplicantes: ut gratiæ tuæ munere, ab omnibus tibi gradibus fideliter serviantur. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum filium tuum: Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate ejusdem spiritus sancti Deus: per omnia sæcula sæculorum.

R. Amen.

O Almighty and everlasting God, by whose spirit the whole body of the Church is sanctified and governed; hear our humble prayers for all degrees thereof, that by the assistance of thy grace, they may faithfully serve thee. Through our Lord Jesus Christ thy son: Who liveth and reigneth with Thee in the unity of the same Holy Ghost, one God, world without end.

R. Amen.

¶ *Or,*

Deus omnium fidelium pastor et rector, O God, the pastor and governor of all the

famulum tuum N., quem  
pastorem Ecclesiæ tuæ  
præesse voluisti, propi-  
tius respice : da ei, quæ-  
sumus, verbo et exem-  
plo quibus præest profi-  
cere : ut ad vitam, unâ  
cum grege sibi credito,  
perveniat sempiternam.  
Per Dominum nostrum  
Jesum Christum filium  
tuum : Qui tecum vivat  
et regnat in unitate spi-  
ritus sancti Deus ; per  
omnia sæcula sæculorum.

R. Amen.

faithful, look down, in  
thy mercy, on thy ser-  
vant N., whom thou hast  
appointed pastor over thy  
Church : and grant, we  
beseech thee, that, both  
by word and example,  
he may edify all those  
who are under his charge,  
and with the flock in-  
trusted to him, arrive at  
length at eternal happi-  
ness. Through our Lord  
Jesus Christ thy Son :  
Who liveth and reigneth  
with thee in the unity of  
the Holy Ghost, one God,  
world without end.

R. Amen.

#### EPISTLE. (34)

Lectio Epistolæ beati  
Pauli Apostoli ad Ro-  
manos. c. xi. v. 33, 36.

O Altitudo divitia-  
rum sapientiæ et scien-  
tiæ Dei ; quam incom-  
prehensibilia sunt judi-  
cia ejus, et investiga-  
biles viæ ejus ! Quis

Epistle of St. Paul  
to the Romans, c. xi.  
v. 33-36.

O the depth of the  
riches of the wisdom  
and of the knowledge  
of God ! How incompre-  
hensible are his judge-  
ments, and how un-

enim cognovit sensum	searchable his ways !
Domini: aut quis con-	For who hath known the
siliarius ejus fuit: Aut	mind of the Lord? Or
quis prior dedit illi, et	who hath been his coun-
retribuetur ei? Quo-	sellor? Or who hath first
niam ex ipso, et per	given to him, and recom-
ipsum, et in ipso sunt	pense shall be made him?
omnia. Ipsi honor et	For of him, and by him,
gloria, in sæcula sæcu-	and in him, are all things:
lorum. Amen.	to him be glory for ever.
	Amen.

R. Deo Gratias.

R. Thanks be to God.

*A prayer which may be said at the Epistle.*

Thou hast vouchsafed, O Lord, to teach us thy sacred truths by thy Prophets and Apostles; Grant, therefore, O my God, that I may listen to thy divine instructions with profound respect, and docility of heart. But, above all, grant, that I may so improve by this sacred word in the love of thy holy name, and in the observance of thy law, as to show forth in my whole conduct, that I am truly thy disciple; — that I may no longer follow the corrupt inclinations of flesh and blood, but may master all my passions; and strengthened by thy grace, and directed by thy light, so walk on in the way of thy commandments, as never more wilfully to offend thee by any mortal sin; for I know thou hast said: — *Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only* (St. James i. 22.) *for not the hearers of the law*



*are just before God; but the doers of the law shall be justified.* (Rom. ii. 13.)

¶ *At solemn High Mass, the Subdeacon chants the Epistle, which varies according to the Sunday or Festival.*

#### GRADUAL.<sup>(35)</sup>

Dan. c. iii. Benedictus es Domine, qui intueris abyssos, et sedes super Cherubim.

V. Benedictus es, Domine, in firmamento cœli, et laudabilis in sæcula, Alleluia, Alleluia.

V. Benedictus es, Domine, Deus patrum nostrorum, et laudabilis in sæcula. Alleluia.

Dan. c. iii. Blessed art thou, O Lord, who beholdest the deeps, and sittest on the Cherubim.

V. Blessed art thou, O Lord, in the firmament of the heaven, and worthy of praise for ever. Alleluia, Alleluia.

V. Blessed art thou, O Lord, the God of our fathers, and worthy of praise for ever. Alleluia.

¶ *The Gradual varies with the Sunday; but from Septuagesima Sunday until the Saturday in Holy Week, for this Alleluia of the Gradual, is substituted some portion of the Psalms, which is denominated the Tract.*<sup>(36)</sup>

¶ *At High Mass the Priest here blesses the Incense with the usual prayer: and standing at*

*the middle of the Altar, inclines his head lowly down, and with joined hands resting on the edge of the holy table, repeats this invocation:*

Munda cor meum, ac labia mea, omnipotens Deus, qui labia Isaïæ prophetæ calculo mundasti ignito, ita me tuâ gratâ miseratione dignare mundare, ut sanctum Evangelium tuum dignè valeam nuntiare. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

Cleanse my heart, and my lips, O Almighty God, who didst cleanse the lips of the prophet Isaiah with a burning coal: and vouchsafe, through thy gracious mercy, so to purify me, that I may worthily announce thy holy gospel. Through Christ our Lord. Amen.

Dominus sit in corde meo, et in labiis meis: ut dignè et competenter annuntiem Evangelium suum. Amen.

May the Lord be in my heart, and on my lips, that I may worthily and in a becoming manner announce his holy Gospel. Amen.

¶ *In the interim, the Acolytes, bearing their tapers elevated,<sup>(37)</sup> and the Thurifer, with the Incense,<sup>(38)</sup> proceed to the Gospel-side of the sanctuary, where they remain during the chanting or lecture of the Gospel, at which time the whole of the congregation stands up.<sup>(39)</sup>*

¶ *At solemn High Mass, the Deacon deposits the book of the Gospels on the Altar,<sup>(40)</sup> and then recites, upon his knees, the prayer Munda cor meum, (Cleanse my heart) &c. Having taken the book of the Gospels from the Altar, he kneels down and asks the Priest's blessing; after receiving which, he is accompanied by the Thurifer and the Acolytes to the left side of the Altar, where he chants the Gospel.*

## GOSPEL.

P. Dominus vobiscum.

R. Etcum spiritu tuo.

✠ Sequentia sancti Evangelii secundum Matthæum.

R. Gloria tibi Domine.

P. The Lord be with you.

R. And with thy spirit.

✠ The following is part of the Gospel according to St. Matthew.

R. Glory be to thee, O Lord.

¶ *At these latter words, the Priest makes the sign of the Cross,<sup>(41)</sup> first upon the Missal, and then upon his own forehead, mouth, and breast, and, in this last ceremony, is imitated by the people.<sup>(42)</sup>*

¶ *At High Mass, he afterwards bows to the Missal, and incenses it three times.<sup>(43)</sup>*

Matt. c. xxviii. In illo tempore : dixit Jesus discipulis suis : Data

Matt. c. xxviii. At that time Jesus said to his disciples: All power is given

est mihi omnis potestas in cœlo, et in terra. Eunt ergo docete omnes gentes; baptizantes eos in nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti, docentes eos servare omnia quæcumque mandavi vobis. Et ecce ego vobiscum omnibus diebus, usque ad consummationem sæculi.

R. Laus tibi Christe.

to me in heaven and on earth. Going therefore, teach ye all nations: baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and behold, I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world.

R. Praise be to thee,  
O Christ.

*The following prayer may be said instead of the Gospel.*

O LORD JESUS CHRIST who camest down from heaven to instruct us in all truth; and continuest daily to teach us by thy holy Gospel and the preachers of thy word: grant me grace, that I may not be wanting in any care necessary for being instructed in thy saving truths. Let me be as industrious in my soul's concern as I am for my body; that while I take pains in the affairs of this world, I may not, through stupidity or neglect, suffer my soul to starve and perish everlastingly. Let the rules of thy Gospel be the direction of my life, that I may not only know thy will, but likewise do it; that I may ob-

serve thy commandments ; and resisting all the inclinations of corrupt nature, ever follow Thee, who art the Way, the Truth, and the Life ; for thus only, O Jesus, can I be thy disciple ; and thus only canst Thou be my master.

¶ *At the end of the Gospel, which varies according to the Feast, or Sunday, the Priest, while repeating to himself this aspiration: Per Evangelica dicta deleantur nostra delicta.—May our sins be blotted out by the words of the Gospel,<sup>(44)</sup>—kisses<sup>(45)</sup> the book, and the assistant answers, Laus tibi Christe.—Praise be to thee, O Christ. At Masses of the Dead, the book is not kissed ; lights are not borne ; nor is incense used, because every mark of joy and solemnity is omitted. At Solemn High Mass, the Subdeacon carries the book of the Gospels to the Priest to be kissed by him : and afterwards the Deacon incenses him,<sup>(46)</sup> and in his turn, is incensed by the Thurifer.*

¶ *Then the Priest, standing in front of the Crucifix, repeats the Credo or Creed : (if it is to be said.)<sup>(47)</sup> As he commences, he outstretches his arms,<sup>(48)</sup> but immediately afterwards joins his hands together, while he at the same time makes an inclination of his head<sup>(49)</sup> on pronouncing the word Deo or God, and then goes on reciting the Creed, which he concludes by signing himself with the sign of the Cross.*

## THE CREED.

Credo in unum Deum,  
 Patrem omnipotentem,  
 factorem cœli et terræ,  
 visibilium omnium, et  
 invisibilium. Et in unum  
 Dominum Jesum Chris-  
 tum, Filium Dei unige-  
 nitum. Et ex Patre natum  
 ante omnia sæcula. Deum  
 de Deo, lumen de lumine,  
 Deum verum de Deo  
 vero. Genitum non fac-  
 tum, consubstantialem  
 Patri; per quem omnia  
 facta sunt. Qui propter  
 nos homines, et propter  
 nostram salutem descen-  
 dit de cœlis.\* (*Hic ge-  
 nusflectitur*) ET INCAR-  
 NATUS EST DE SPIRITU  
 SANCTO EX MARIA VIR-  
 GINE: ET HOMO FACTUS  
 EST. Crucifixus etiam  
 pro nobis: sub Pontio  
 Pilato passus, et sepultus  
 est. Et resurrexit tertiâ  
 die, secundum Scriptu-  
 ras. Et ascendit in cœ-

I believe in one God,  
 the Father Almighty,  
 Maker of heaven and  
 earth, and of all things  
 visible and invisible.  
 And in one Lord Jesus  
 Christ, the only begotten  
 Son of God, And born  
 of the Father before all  
 ages, God of God; Light  
 of Light; true God of  
 true God; begotten not  
 made; consubstantial to  
 the Father, by whom all  
 things were made. Who  
 for us men, and for our  
 salvation came down  
 from heaven.\* (*Here  
 all kneel*)<sup>(50)</sup> AND BECAME  
 INCARNATE BY THE HOLY  
 GHOST, OF THE VIRGIN  
 MARY: AND WAS MADE  
 MAN. He was crucified  
 also for us, suffered un-  
 der Pontius Pilate, and  
 was buried. And the  
 third day he rose again  
 according to the Scrip-

lum : sedet ad dexteram Patris. Et iterum venturus est cum gloriâ judicare vivos et mortuos : cujus regni non erit finis. Et in Spiritum sanctum Dominum et vivificantem : qui ex Patre Filioque procedit. Qui cum Patre et Filio simul adoratur et conglorificatur : qui locutus est per prophetas. Et unam sanctam Catholicam, et Apostolicam Ecclesiam. Confiteor unum baptisma in remissionem peccatorum. Et expecto resurrectionem mortuorum. Et vitam ✝ venturi sæculi. Amen.

P. Dominus vobiscum.

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

*Oremus.*

tures, and ascended into heaven : sitteth at the right hand of the Father. And is to come again with glory to judge both the living and the dead : of whose kingdom there shall be no end.

And in the Holy Ghost, the Lord and Giver of life, who proceedeth from the Father and the Son : who together with the Father and the Son, is adored and glorified ; who spoke by the prophets. And One, Holy, Catholic, and Apostolic Church. I confess one baptism for the remission of sins, and I expect the resurrection of the dead, and the life ✝<sup>(61)</sup> of the world to come. Amen.

P. The Lord be with you.<sup>(62)</sup>

R. And with thy spirit.

*Let us pray.*

OFFERTORY.<sup>(53)</sup>

Benedictus sit Deus, Pater, unigenitusque Dei Filius; sanctus quo- que Spiritus ( <i>Tob. c. xii.</i> ) quia fecit nobiscum mi- sericordiam suam.	Blessed be God the Father, and the only be- gotten Son of God, as likewise the Holy Ghost, ( <i>Tob. c. xii.</i> ) because he hath shown his mercy to us.
--	---

OBLATION OF THE HOST.<sup>(54)</sup>

¶ *At Low Mass, the Priest here unveils the Chalice, and unfolds the Corporal;<sup>(55)</sup> then taking the Paten<sup>(56)</sup> with the Host,<sup>(57)</sup> elevates it with both hands, reciting, at the same time, the following prayer.*

¶ *At Solemn High Mass, the Chalice is deposited on the Altar, by the Sub-deacon, and the Corporal is unfolded by the Deacon.*

Suscipe, sancte Pater omnipotens, æterne De- us, hanc immaculatam Hostiam, quam ego in- dignus famulus tuus of- fero tibi Deo meo vivo et vero, pro innumera- bilibus peccatis, et of- fensionibus et negligen- tiis meis, et pro omnibus	Accept, <sup>(58)</sup> O holy Fa- ther, Almighty and eter- nal God, this unspotted Host, <sup>(59)</sup> which I thy un- worthy servant, offer un- to thee, my living and true God, <sup>(60)</sup> for my innu- merable sins, offences, and negligences, <sup>(61)</sup> and for all here present; as
--	--



circumstantibus, sed et also for all faithful  
 pro omnibus fidelibus Christians,<sup>(62)</sup> both living  
 Christianis vivis atque and dead;<sup>(63)</sup> that it may  
 defunctis; ut mihi et il- avail both me and them  
 lis proficiat ad salutem unto life everlasting.  
 in vitam æternam. Amen. Amen.

¶ *Having made the sign of the Cross with the Paten, the Priest places the Host upon the Corporal, the Deacon pours wine, and the Subdeacon a small quantity of water<sup>(64)</sup> into the Chalice, at Solemn High Mass; at Low Mass, the Priest does it himself. Before the water is poured, he makes (excepting at Masses of the Dead) the sign of the Cross over it, and says:*

<p>Deus, † qui humanæ          substantiæ dignitatem          mirabiliter condidisti et          mirabilius reformasti:          da nobis per hujus aquæ          et vini mysterium, ejus          divinitatis esse consor-          tes, qui humanitatis nos-          træ fieri dignatus est          particeps, Jesus Christus          Filius tuus Dominus nos-          ter: Qui tecum vivit et          regnat in unitate Spiri-          tûs sancti Deus, per om-</p>	<p>O God, † who hast          shown the wonders of          thy goodness to man in          his creation, and still          more so in his redemp-          tion, grant that by the          Mystery of this Water          and Wine, we may be          made partakers of his di-          vine nature, who vouch-          safed to become partak-          er of our human nature,  <i>namely</i>, Jesus Christ our          Lord thy Son, who liveth</p>
--	---

nia sæcula sæculorum. and reigneth with Thee  
 Amen. in the unity of the Holy  
 Ghost, one God, world  
 without end. Amen.

## OBLATION OF THE CHALICE.

Offerimus tibi, Domine, Calicem salutaris, tuam deprecantes clementiam, ut in conspectu divinæ Majestatis tuæ, pro nostrâ et totius mundi salute cum odore suavitatis ascendat. Amen.	We offer unto thee, O Lord, the Chalice of Salvation, beseeching thy clemency, that it may ascend before thy divine Majesty, as a sweet odour, for our salvation, and for that of the whole world. Amen.
---	--

¶ *At Solemn High Masses, the Sub-deacon here receives the Paten which he envelopes in the extremities of the veil with which his shoulders are mantled, and then goes and stands behind the Celebrant, holding it up in an elevated position until the conclusion of the Pater Noster, when he again deposits it upon the Altar.*<sup>(65)</sup>

¶ *When the Priest bows before the Altar, he says:*

In spiritu humilitatis, et in animo contrito suscipiamur â te Domine: et sic fiat sacrificium nostrum in conspectu	Accept us, O Lord, coming to thee in the spirit of humility, and contrition of heart, and grant, that the sacrifice
--	---

tuo hodie, ut placeat ti-	which we offer this day
bi Domine Deus.	in thy sight, may be
	pleasing to thee O Lord
	God.

¶ *Here the Priest elevates his eyes towards heaven,<sup>(66)</sup> and outstretching his hands<sup>(67)</sup> which he afterwards joins, makes the sign of the Cross, over the Host and Chalice,<sup>(68)</sup> at the same time that he repeats the following prayer.*

Veni, sanctificator om-	Come, O Almighty
nipotens æterne Deus,	and eternal God, the
et bene † dic hoc sacri-	sanctifier, and bless †
ficiū tuo sancto nomi-	this sacrifice, prepared
ni præparatum.	for the glory of thy
	holy name.

¶ *At High Mass, he then blesses the Incense<sup>(69)</sup> in the following prayer.*

Per intercessionem	May the Lord, by the
beati Michaëlis Archan-	intercession of the bless-
geli stantis a dextris al-	ed Michael the Archan-
taris Incensi, et omnium	gel standing <sup>(70)</sup> at the
electorum suorum, in-	right hand of the Altar
censum istud dignetur	of Incense, and of all his
Dominus bene † dicere,	Elect, vouchsafe to bless
et in odorem suavitatis	† this Incense, and re-
accipere. Per Christum	ceive it as an odour of
nostrum. Amen.	sweetness. Through
	Christ our Lord. Amen.

¶ *Afterwards he incenses the bread and wine, saying;*

Incensum istud a te	May this Incense
benedictum ascendat, ad	which thou hast blest,
te, Domine, et descen-	O Lord, ascend to thee,
dat super nos misericor-	and may thy mercy de-
dia tua.	scend upon us.

¶ *He then incenses the Altar, repeating at the same time the following Psalm.*

Ps. cxl.

Ps. cxl.

Dirigatur, Domine oratio mea: sicut incensum in conspectu tuo: elevatio manuum mearum sacrificium vespertinum. Pone, Domine, custodiam ori meo, et ostium circumstantiæ labiis meis: ut non declinet cor meum in verba malitiæ, ad excusandas excusationes in peccatis.

Let my prayer,<sup>(71)</sup> O Lord, be directed as Incense in thy sight; the lifting up of my hands, as evening sacrifice. Set a watch, O Lord, before my mouth, and a door round about my lips, that my heart may not incline to evil words, to make excuses in sins.

¶ *When the Priest returns the Censer, at Solemn High Mass, to the Deacon, at others to the Thurifer, he recites to himself these words; and is afterwards incensed<sup>(72)</sup> by the attendant minister.*

Accendat in nobis	May the Lord enkin-
-------------------	---------------------

Dominus ignem sui a-	dle within us the Fire
moris, et flammam æter-	of his Love, and the
næ charitatis. Amen.	Flame of everlasting
	Charity. Amen.

¶ *The Priest, with his hands joined, goes to the Epistle side of the Altar,<sup>(73)</sup> where he washes the tips of his fingers<sup>(74)</sup> as he recites the following verses of Psalm xxv. which, excepting at Masses for the Dead, and during Passion-time, he concludes with the minor Doxology; Glory be to the Father, &c.<sup>(75)</sup>*

Ps. xxv. v. 6. Lavabo	Ps. xxv. v. 6. I will
inter innocentes manus	wash my hands among
meas : et circumdabo	the innocent : and will
altare tuum, Domine.	compass thy altar, O
	Lord.

Ut audiam vocem lau-	That I may hear the
dis : et enarrem univer-	voice of thy praise : and
sa mirabilia tua.	tell of all thy wondrous
	works.

Domine, dilexi deco-	I have loved, O Lord,
rem domûs tuæ, et lo-	the beauty of thy house;
cum habitationis gloriæ	and the place where thy
tuæ.	glory dwelleth.

Ne perdas cum impiis,	Take not away my
Deus, animam meam :	soul, O God, with the
et cum viris sanguinum	wicked : nor my life
vitam meam.	with bloody men.

In quorum manibus	In whose hands are
-------------------	--------------------

iniquitates sunt : dex- iniquities : their right  
tera eorum repleta est hand is filled with gifts.  
muneribus.

Ego autem in inno- But as for me I have  
centiâ meâ ingressus walked in my innocence:  
sum : redime me, et mi- redeem me, and have  
serere mei. mercy on me.

Pes meus stetit in di- My foot hath stood  
recto : in Ecclesiis be- in the direct way: in the  
nedicam te, Domine. churches I will bless  
thee, O Lord.

Gloria Patri et Filio, Glory be to the Fa-  
et Spiritui Sancto. ther, and to the Son,  
and to the Holy Ghost.

Sicut erat in princi- As it was in the be-  
pio, et nunc, et semper, ginning, is now, and  
et in sæcula sæculorum. ever shall be, world with-  
Amen. out end. Amen.

¶ *Returning and standing before the middle of the Altar, with his head bowed down, the Priest recites to himself the following prayer.*

Suscipe, sancta Trini- Receive, O holy Tri-  
tas, hanc oblationem, nity, <sup>(76)</sup> this oblation,  
quam tibi offerimus ob which we make to thee  
memoriam passionis, re- in memory of the Pas-  
surrectionis, et ascen- sion, Resurrection, and  
sionis Jesu Christi Do- Ascension, of our Lord  
mini nostri: et in honore Jesus Christ : and in  
beatæ Mariæ semper commemoration of the

virginis, et beati Joannis Baptistæ, et sanctorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, et istorum, et omnium Sanctorum : ut illis proficiat ad honorem, nobis autem ad salutem ; et illi pro nobis intercedere dignentur in cœlis, quorum memoriam agimus in terris. Per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum.

Amen.

blessed Mary ever a virgin, the blessed John Baptist, the holy Apostles Peter and Paul, and of all the Saints ;<sup>(77)</sup> that it may be available to their honour and our salvation ; and may they vouchsafe to intercede for us in heaven, whose memory we celebrate on earth. Through the same Christ our Lord.

Amen.

¶ *Turning himself towards the people, he says ;*

Orate, Fratres, ut meum ac vestrum sacrificium acceptabile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipotentem.

R. Suscipiat Dominus sacrificium de manibus tuis, ad laudem et gloriam nominis sui, ad utilitatem quoque nostram, totiusque ecclesiæ suæ sanctæ.

Brethren,<sup>(78)</sup> pray that my sacrifice and yours may be acceptable to God the Father Almighty.

R. May the Lord receive the sacrifice from thy hands, to the praise and glory of his name, and to our benefit, and to that of his holy Church.

THE SECRET.<sup>(79)</sup>

Sanctifica, quæsumus,	Sanctify, we beseech
Domine Deus noster,	thee, O Lord our God,
per tui sancti nominis	by the invocation of thy
invocationem hujus ob-	holy name, the victim of
lationis hostiam, et per	this oblation : and by it
eam nosmetipsos tibi	make us an eternal of-
perficere munus æternum.	fering to thee. Through
Per Dominum.	&c.

¶ *The Secret varies according to the Festival or Sunday.*

## OCCASIONAL SECRETS.

¶ *Which follow the Rubrics, and correspond with the Collects, &c.*

Exaudi nos, Deus sa-	Graciously hear us,
lutaris noster ; ut per	O God our Saviour :
hujus sacramenti virtu-	that by virtue of this
tem, a cunctis nos men-	sacrament, thou mayest
tis et corporis hostibus	defend us from all ene-
tuearis : gratiam tribu-	mies of both soul and
ens in præsentî, et glo-	body : grant us grace
riam in futuro.	in this life, and glory in
	the next.

In mentibus nostris,	Strengthen, we be-
quæsumus, Domine, ve-	seech thee, O Lord, in
ræ fidei sacramenta con-	our souls the mysteries
firma : ut qui concep-	of the true faith : that



tum de virgine Deum  
verum et hominem con-  
fitemur ; per ejus salu-  
tiferæ resurrectionis po-  
tentiam, ad æternam  
mereamur pervenire læ-  
titiam.

Da famulis tuis, Do-  
mine, indulgentiam pec-  
catorum, consolationem  
vitæ, gubernationem  
perpetuam : ut tibi ser-  
vientes, ad tuam jugiter  
misericordiam pervenire  
mereantur. Per Domi-  
num nostrum.

we who confess him,  
who was conceived of a  
Virgin, to be true God,  
and true man, may, by  
the power of his saving  
resurrection, deserve to  
come to eternal joys.

Grant thy servants,  
O Lord, the pardon of  
their sins, comfort in  
life, and thy perpetual  
protection ; that, perse-  
vering in thy service,  
they may for ever ob-  
tain thy mercy. Through  
&c.

*Or,*

Oblatis, quæsumus  
Domine, placare mune-  
ribus : et famulum tu-  
um, N. quem pastorem  
Ecclesiæ tuæ præesse  
voluisti, assiduâ protec-  
tione gubernare. Per Do-  
minum nostrum Jesum  
Christum filium tuum :  
Qui tecum vivit et reg-  
nat in unitate Spiritus  
sancti Deus :

Be appeased, O Lord,  
with the offering we  
have made, and cease  
not to protect thy ser-  
vant N. whom thou hast  
been pleased to appoint  
Pastor over thy Church.  
Through our Lord Jesus  
Christ thy Son : who  
liveth and reigneth with  
thee in the unity of the  
Holy Ghost, one God :

¶ *Here he elevates his voice, and says :*

P. Per omnia sæcula      P. World without  
sæculorum.      end.<sup>(80)</sup>

R. Amen.      R. Amen.

P. Dominus vobis-      P. The Lord be with  
cum.      you.

R. Et cum spiritu      R. And with thy  
tuo.      spirit.

¶ *Here he uplifts his hands.*<sup>(81)</sup>

P. Sursum corda.      P. Lift up your  
hearts.

R. Habemus ad Do-      R. We have lifted  
minum.      them up to the Lord.

P. Gratias agamus      P. Let us give thanks  
Domino Deo nostro.      to the Lord our God.<sup>(82)</sup>

R. Dignum et justum      R. It is meet and just.  
est.

#### THE PREFACE.<sup>(83)</sup>

<p>Vere dignum et justum est, æquum et salutare, nos tibi semper et ubique gratias agere: Domine sancte, Pater omnipotens, æterne Deus. Qui cum unigenito Filio tuo, et Spiritu Sancto, unus es Deus, unus es Dominus : non</p>	<p>It is truly meet and just, right and available to salvation, that we should always, and in all places give thanks to thee, O holy Lord, Father Almighty, eternal God, who together with thy only begotten Son, and the Holy Ghost, art</p>
---	---

in unius singularitate personæ, sed in unius Trinitate substantiæ. Quod enim de tuâ gloriâ, revelante te credimus, hoc de Filio tuo, hoc de Spiritu Sancto, sine differentiâ discretionis sentimus. Ut in confessione veræ, sempiternæque Deitatis, et in personis proprietas, et in essentiâ unitas, et in maiestate adoreturæqualitas. Quam laudant Angeli, atque Archangeli, Cherubim quoque ac Seraphim: qui non cessant clamare quotidie, una voce dicentes :

one God, and one Lord: not in a singularity of Person but in Trinity of substance. For what we believe of thy glory, as thou hast revealed, the same we believe of thy Son and of the Holy Ghost, without any difference or distinction. So that, in the confession of the true and eternal Deity, we adore a distinction in the Persons, a unity in the Essence, and an equality in the Majesty. Whom the Angels and Archangels, the Cherubim also and Seraphim praise, and cease not daily to cry out with one voice saying :

¶ *Here the Priest lowers the tone of his voice, which however still continues audible ; and with his hands joined, and his head profoundly inclined, he recites the following hymn,<sup>(84)</sup> while the bell<sup>(85)</sup> is rung by the Acolyte.*

Sanctus, Sanctus, Holy, Holy, Holy  
Sanctus Dominus Deus Lord God of Sabaoth.<sup>(86)</sup>

Sabaoth. Pleni sunt Cœli  
et Terra gloriâ tuâ.

Heaven and earth are  
full of thy glory.

Hosanna in excelsis.  
Benedictus qui venit in  
nomine Domini. Ho-  
sanna in excelsis.

Hosanna in the high-  
est. Blessed is he that  
cometh in the name of  
the Lord.<sup>(87)</sup> Hosanna<sup>(88)</sup>  
in the highest.

¶ *On all Sundays in the year which have no  
proper Preface, the foregoing is recited.*

*The common Preface on all Festivals, and other  
days to which a peculiar one is not assigned,  
and in Masses of the Dead, is the following:*

Vere dignum et jus-  
tum est, æquum et sa-  
lutare, nos tibi semper  
et ubique gratias agere,  
Domine Sancte, Pater  
omnipotens æternę De-  
us : per Christum Domi-  
num nostrum. Per quem  
majestatem tuam lau-  
dant Angeli, adorant  
Dominationes, tremunt  
Potestates. Cœli cœlo-  
rumque virtutes, ac be-  
ata Seraphim, sociâ ex-  
ultatione concelebrant.  
Cum quibus et nostras

It is truly meet and  
just, right and available  
to salvation, that we  
should always, and in  
all places give thanks  
to thee, O holy Lord,  
Father Almighty, Eter-  
nal God, through Christ  
our Lord. Through  
whom the Angels praise  
thy Majesty, the Domi-  
nations adore it, the  
Powers tremble before  
it. The Heavens, and  
the Powers of Heaven,  
and blessed Seraphim

voces, ut admitti jubeas  
deprecamur, supplici  
confessione dicentes,

with common jubilee  
glorify it. Together with  
whom we beseech thee,  
that we may be admit-  
ted to join our humble  
voices saying,

Sanctus, Sanctus,  
Sanctus, &c.

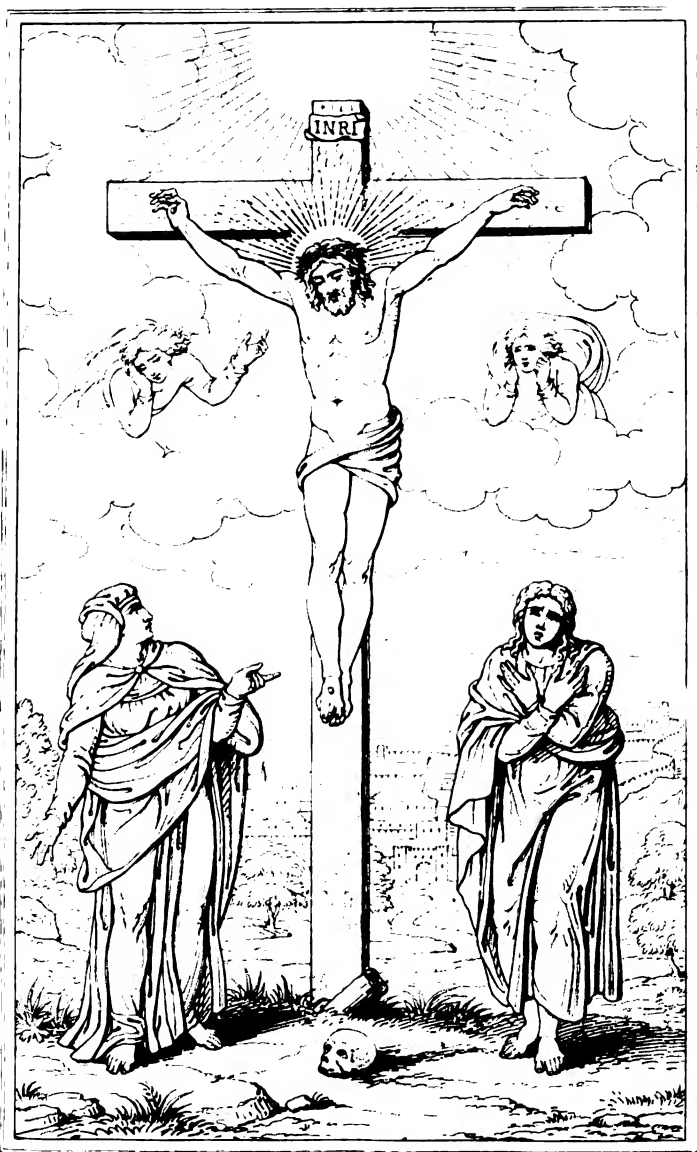
Holy, Holy, Holy,  
&c.

¶ *The Priest lifts up his eyes and hands to-  
wards heaven,<sup>(89)</sup> and after kissing the Altar,<sup>(90)</sup>  
makes the sign of the Cross three times over  
the Oblation.<sup>(91)</sup>*

### THE CANON<sup>(92)</sup> OF THE MASS.

Te igitur, Clemen-  
tissime Pater, per Je-  
sum Christum Filium  
tuum Dominum nos-  
trum, supplices roga-  
mus, ac petimus, uti  
accepta habeas et be-  
nedicas, hæc ✙ dona,  
hæc ✙ munera, hæc ✙  
Sancta Sacrificia illibata.  
In primis quæ tibi offe-  
rimus pro Ecclesiâ tuâ  
Sanctâ Catholicâ: quam  
pacificare, custodire, a-  
dunare, et regere digne-

We humbly pray and  
beseech Thee, there-  
fore, most merciful Fa-  
ther through Jesus Christ  
thy Son, our Lord, that  
thou wouldst vouchsafe  
to accept and bless these  
✙ gifts,<sup>(93)</sup> these ✙ pre-  
sents, these ✙ holy un-  
spotted sacrifices which  
in the first place we offer  
thee for thy holy Catho-  
lic Church,<sup>(94)</sup> to which  
vouchsafe to grant peace;  
as also to preserve, unite,



Michael Angelo inv

Ch de Chaulon d

H Moser sc

London: Printed for J. Smith, in Strand, 1783.



ris toto orbe terrarum :	and govern it throughout
unâ cum famulo tuo	the world, together
Papa nostro N. et Anti-	with thy servant N. our
stite nostro N. et Rege	Pope, <sup>(95)</sup> N. our bishop,
nostro N. et omnibus	and N. our King, <sup>(96)</sup> as
Orthodoxis, atque Ca-	also all orthodox believ-
tholicæ et Apostolicæ	ers and professors of the
fidei cultoribus.	Catholic and Apostolic
	faith.

COMMEMORATION OF THE LIVING.

Memento, Domine,	Be mindful, O Lord,
famulorum famularum-	of thy servants, men
que N. et N.	and women, N. and N.

¶ *He silently mentions those whom he intends to pray for.*

Et omnium circum-	And of all here pre-
stantium, quorum tibi	sent, whose faith and de-
fides cognita est, et nota	votion are known unto
devotio, pro quibus tibi	thee, for whom we offer,
offerimus, vel qui tibi	or who offer up to thee
offerunt hoc sacrificium	this Sacrifice of praise
laudis pro se, suisque	for themselves, their fa-
omnibus pro redemptione	milies, and friends, for
animarum suarum,	the redemption of their
pro spe salutis et inco-	souls, for the health and
lunitatis suæ, tibi que	salvation they hope for,
reddunt vota sua æter-	and who pay their vows
no Deo, vivo et vero.	to thee, the eternal, liv-
	ing and true God.



Communicantes et  
 memoriam venerantes,  
 in primis gloriosæ sem-  
 per Virginis Mariæ Ge-  
 netricis Dei et Domini  
 nostri Jesu Christi : sed  
 et beatorum Apostolo-  
 rum, ac Martyrum tuo-  
 rum, Petri et Pauli, An-  
 dreæ, Jacobi, Joannis,  
 Thomæ, Jacobi, Philip-  
 pi, Bartholomæi, Mat-  
 thæi, Simonis et Thadæi,  
 Lini, Cleti, Clementis,  
 Xysti, Cornelii, Cypria-  
 ni, Laurentii, Chrysogo-  
 ni, Joannis et Pauli,  
 Cosmæ et Damiani, et  
 omnium Sanctorum tu-  
 orum : quorum meritis  
 precibusque concedas,  
 ut in omnibus protecti-  
 onis tuæ muniamur au-  
 xilio. Per eundem Chris-  
 tum Dominum nostrum.  
 Amen.

Communicating<sup>(97)</sup>  
 with and honouring in  
 the first place, the me-  
 mory<sup>(98)</sup> of the ever Vir-  
 gin Mary, Mother of our  
 Lord Jesus Christ, as al-  
 so of the blessed Apo-  
 stles and Martyrs, Peter  
 and Paul, Andrew, James,  
 John, Thomas, James,  
 Philip, Bartholomew,  
 Matthew, Simon and  
 Thaddeus : Linus, Cle-  
 tus, Clement, Xystus,  
 Cornelius, Cyprian, Lau-  
 rence, Chrysogonus,  
 John and Paul, Cosmas  
 and Damian, and of all  
 thy Saints ; by whose  
 merits and prayers, grant  
 that we may be always  
 defended by the help of  
 thy protection.<sup>(99)</sup>  
 Through the same Christ  
 our Lord. Amen.

¶ *Spreading his hands over the Oblation he*  
*says :*<sup>(100)</sup>

Hanc igitur oblatio-      We therefore be-

nem servitutis nostræ, sed et cunctæ familiæ tuæ, quæsumus Domine, ut placatus accipias, diesque nostros in tua pace disponas, atque ab æterna damnatione nos eripi, et in electorum tuorum jubeas gregem numerari. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

seech thee, O Lord, graciously to accept this oblation of our service; as also of thy whole family, and dispose our days in thy peace, preserve us from eternal damnation, and rank us in the number of thine elect. Through Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

Quam oblationem tu Deus in omnibus, quæsumus, benedic†tam, adscrip†tam, ra†tam, rationabilem, acceptabilemque facere digneris: ut nobis Cor†pus, et San†guis fiat dilectissimi Filii tui Domini nostri Jesu Christi.

Which oblation do thou, O God, vouchsafe in all respects to bless, † approve, † ratify, † and accept, that it may be made for us the Body † and Blood † of thy most beloved Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

Qui pridie quam pateretur, accepit panem in sanctas ac venerabiles manus suas; et elevatis oculis in cælum ad te Deum Patrem suum om-

Who the day before he suffered, took bread into his holy and venerable hands, and with his eyes lifted up towards heaven to thee,

nipotentem: tibi gratias  
agens, bene † dixit, fre-  
git deditque discipulis  
suis, dicens: Accipite et  
manducate ex hoc om-  
nes.

HOC EST ENIM CORPUS  
MEUM.

the Almighty God, his  
Father: giving thanks to  
thee, he blessed, † brake,  
and gave it to his disci-  
ples, saying; Take and  
eat ye all of this.

FOR THIS IS MY BODY.

¶ *After pronouncing the Words of Consecration,  
the Priest kneeling adores,<sup>(101)</sup> and elevates<sup>(102)</sup> the  
sacred Host: and the Acolyte rings the bell.*

Similimodo postquam  
coenatum est, accipiens  
et hunc præclarum Ca-  
licem in sanctas ac vene-  
rabiles manussuas: item  
tibi gratias agens, bene-  
† dixit, deditque disci-  
pulis suis, dicens; Ac-  
cipite et bibite ex eo  
omnes. HIC EST ENIM CA-  
LIX SANGUINIS MEI, NOVI  
ET ÆTERNI TESTAMENTI:  
MYSTERIUM FIDEI: QUI  
PRO VOBIS ET PRO MULTIS  
EFFUNDETUR IN REMISSIO-  
NEM PECCATORUM. Hæc  
quotiescunque feceritis,

In like manner, after  
he had supped, taking  
also this excellent Cha-  
lice into his holy and  
venerable hands, giving  
thee also thanks, he  
blessed, † and gave it  
to his disciples, saying:  
Take and drink ye all  
of this. FOR THIS IS THE  
CHALICE OF MY BLOOD  
OF THE NEW AND ETERNAL  
TESTAMENT: THE MYS-  
TERY OF FAITH, WHICH  
SHALL BE SHED FOR YOU,  
AND FOR MANY, TO THE RE-  
MISSION OF SINS. As often

in mei memoriam facie-  
tis.

as you do these things,  
ye shall do them in re-  
membrance of me.

¶ *Here also kneeling, he adores; and elevates  
the Chalice. The Acolyte rings the bell.*<sup>(103)</sup>

Unde et memores,  
Domine nos servi tui,  
sed et plebs tua sancta,  
ejusdem Christi Filii tui  
Domini nostri tam beatæ  
Passionis, nec non et ab  
inferis Resurrectionis  
sed et in cœlos gloriosæ  
Ascensionis: offerimus  
præclaræ majestati tuæ  
de tuis donis ac datis,  
Hostiam ✠ puram, Hos-  
tiam ✠ sanctam, Hostiam  
✠ immaculatam: Panem  
✠ sanctum vitæ æternæ  
et Calicem ✠ salutis per-  
petuæ.

Wherefore, O Lord,  
we thy servants, as also  
thy holy people, calling  
to mind the blessed pas-  
sion of the same Christ  
thy Son our Lord, his Re-  
surrection from hell,<sup>(104)</sup>  
and admirable Ascension  
into heaven, offer unto  
thy most excellent Ma-  
jesty of thy gifts be-  
stowed upon us a pure  
✠ Victim,<sup>(105)</sup> a holy ✠  
Victim, an unspotted ✠  
Victim, the holy ✠ Bread  
of eternal life and Cha-  
lice ✠ of everlasting sal-  
vation.

Supra quæ, propitio  
ac sereno vultu respicere  
digneris; et accepta ha-  
bere, sicuti accepta ha-  
bere dignatus es munera  
pueri tui justî Abel, et

Upon which, vouch-  
safe to look, with a pro-  
pitious and serene coun-  
tenance, and to accept  
them, as thou wast  
pleased to accept the

sacrificium Patriarchæ  
nostri Abrahæ: et quod  
tibi obtulit summus sa-  
cerdos tuus Melchise-  
dech, sanctum sacrifici-  
um, immaculatam Hos-  
tiam.

gifts of thy just servant  
Abel, and the sacrifice  
of our Patriarch Abra-  
ham, and that which thy  
high Priest Melchise-  
dech offered to thee, a  
holy Sacrifice and un-  
spotted Victim.

¶ *He profoundly inclines himself:*

Supplices te roga-  
mus, Omnipotens Deus,  
jube hæc perferri per  
manus sancti Angeli tui  
in sublime altare tuum,  
in conspectu divinæ  
Majestatis tuæ: ut quot-  
quot, ex hac altaris par-  
ticipatione, sacrosanc-  
tum Filii tui Cor+pus,  
et Sang+uinem sump-  
serimus, omni benedic-  
tione cœlesti, et gratia  
repleamur. Per eum-  
dem Christum Dominum  
nostrum. Amen.

We most humbly be-  
seech thee, Almighty  
God, command these  
things to be carried by  
the hands of thy holy  
Angel to thy altar on  
high, in the sight of thy  
divine Majesty: that  
whosoever of us, by par-  
taking of these gifts on  
thy altar, shall receive  
the most sacred Body+  
and Blood of thy Son,  
may be filled with every  
heavenly grace and bles-  
sing. Through the same  
Christ our Lord. Amen.

COMMEMORATION OF THE DEAD.<sup>(106)</sup>

<p>Memento etiam Domine, famulorum famularumque tuarum N. et N. qui nos præcesserunt cum signo fidei, et dormiunt in somno pacis.</p>	<p>Be mindful also, O Lord, of thy servants N. and N. who are gone before us, with the sign of faith, and rest in the sleep of peace.<sup>(107)</sup></p>
---	---

¶ *Here particular mention is silently made of such of the Dead as are to be prayed for.*

<p>Ipsis, Domine, et omnibus in Christo quiescentibus, locum refrigerii lucis et pacis ut indulgeas, deprecamur. Per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum.</p> <p>Amen.</p>	<p>To these, O Lord, and to all<sup>(108)</sup> who sleep in Christ, grant we beseech thee, a place of refreshment, light, and peace. Through the same Christ our Lord. Amen.</p>
--	---

¶ *Here striking his breast, he says :<sup>(109)</sup>*

<p>Nobis quoque peccatoribus famulis tuis, de multitudine miseracionum tuarum sperantibus, partem aliquam et societatem donare digneris, cum tuis sanctis Apostolis et Martyribus: cum Joanne, Stephano, Matthias, Barnabas, Ig-</p>	<p>Also to us sinners, thy servants, confiding in the multitude of thy mercies, vouchsafe to grant some part and fellowship<sup>(110)</sup> with thy holy Apostles and Martyrs; with John, Stephen, Matthias, Barnabas, Ig-</p>
--	---

Matthia, Barnaba, Ignatio, Alexandro, Marcelino, Petro, Felicitate, Perpetua, Agatha, Lucia, Agnete, Cæcilia, Anastasia, et omnibus sanctis tuis: intra quorum nos consortium, non æstimator meriti, sed veniæ, quæsumus largitor admitte. Per Christum Dominum nostrum.

Per quem hæc omnia, Domine, semper bona creas, sancti†ficas, vivi†ficas, bene†dicis, et præstas nobis. Per ip†sum, et cum ip†so, et in ip†so, est tibi Deo Patri † Omnipotenti, in unitate Spiritus † Sancti, omnis honor et gloria.

natias, Alexander, Marcellinus, Peter, Felicitas, Perpetua, Agathy, Lucy, Agnes, Cecily, Anastasia, and with all thy saints: into whose company we beseech thee to admit us, not in consideration of our merit, but of thy own gracious pardon. Through Christ our Lord.

Through whom, O Lord, thou dost always create, sanctify, † quicken, † bless, and † give us all these good things. Through him, † and with him, † and in him, † is to thee, God the Father † Almighty, in the unity of the Holy † Ghost, all honour and glory.<sup>(111)</sup>

¶ *Here he elevates his voice:*

P. Per omnia sæcula  
sæculorum.

R. Amen.

P. World without  
end.

R. Amen.

*Oremus.*

Præceptis salutaribus  
moniti, et divina insti-  
tutione formati, aude-  
mus dicere.

Pater noster qui es in  
cœlis; sanctificetur no-  
men tuum : Adveniat  
regnum tuum : Fiat  
voluntas tua sicut in  
cœlo, et in terra. Pa-  
nem nostrum quotidia-  
num da nobis hodie :  
Et dimitte nobis debita  
nostra, sicut et nos di-  
mittimus debitoribus  
nostris. Et ne nos in-  
ducas in tentationem.

R. Sed libera nos a  
malo.

P. Amen.

¶ *At solemn High Mass, the Deacon, towards  
the conclusion of the Pater noster, goes to the  
right hand of the Priest, where he awaits the  
approach of the Sub-deacon, from whom he  
receives the Paten which he puts into the hand  
of the Priest, who then says :*

Libera nos quæsu-

*Let us pray.*

Being instructed by  
thy saving precepts, and  
following thy divine di-  
rections, we presume to  
say.

Our Father,<sup>(112)</sup> who  
art in heaven, hallowed  
be thy name : thy king-  
dom come : thy will be  
done on earth, as it is  
in heaven : give us this  
day our daily bread ;  
and forgive us our tres-  
passes as we forgive  
them that trespass  
against us : and lead us  
not into temptation.

R. But deliver us  
from evil.

P. Amen.

Deliver us, we be-



mus, Domine, ab omnibus malis, præteritis, præsentibus et futuris: et intercedente beata et gloriosa semper Virgine Dei Genitrice Maria, cum beatis Apostolis tuis Petro, et Paulo, atque Andrea, et omnibus sanctis: da propitius pacem in diebus nostris: ut ope misericordiæ tuæ adiuti, et a peccato simus semper liberi, et ab omni perturbatione securi: Per eundem Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum Filium tuum: Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate Spiritus sancti Deus.

seech thee, O Lord, from all evils past, present, and to come; and the blessed and glorious Mary the ever Virgin mother of God,<sup>(113)</sup> together with thy blessed Apostles Peter, and Paul, and Andrew, and all the Saints interceding for us, mercifully grant peace<sup>(114)</sup> in our days: that through the assistance of thy mercy, we may be always free from sin, and secure from all disturbance. Through the same Lord Jesus Christ thy Son: who liveth and reigneth with Thee in the unity of the Holy Ghost, one God:

¶ *Here he elevates his voice, and says:*

P. Per omnia sæcula  
sæculorum.

R. Amen.

P. Pax Domini sit

P. World without  
end.

R. Amen.

P. The peace of the

semper vobiscum.

Lord be always with  
you.

R. Etcumspiritutuo.

R. And with thyspirit.

¶ *Here the Priest breaks the Sacred Host<sup>(116)</sup> into two parts, from one of which, he detaches a little particle; and having deposited the two larger ones upon the Paten, he puts the small one in the Chalice, saying;*<sup>(116)</sup>

Hæc commixtio et  
consecratio Corporis et  
Sanguinis Domini nos-  
tri Jesu Christi, fiat ac-  
cipientibus nobis in vi-  
tam æternam. Amen.

May this mixture, and  
consecration of the Body  
and Blood of our Lord  
Jesus Christ, be to us  
who receive it, effectual  
to eternal life. Amen.

¶ *Then having made a genuflection, striking his breast, he says;*

Agnus Dei qui tollis  
peccata mundi, miserere  
nobis.

Lamb of God who  
takest away the sins of  
the world, have mercy  
on us.<sup>(117)</sup>

Agnus Dei qui tollis  
peccata mundi, miserere  
nobis.

Lamb of God who  
takest away the sins of  
the world, have mercy  
on us.

Agnus Dei qui tollis  
peccata mundi, dona no-  
bis pacem.

Lamb of God who  
takest away the sins of  
the world, give us thy  
peace.

E

¶ *In Masses of the Dead, he says :*

Agnus Dei qui tollis	Lamb of God who
peccata mundi, dona eis	takest away the sins of
requiem.	the world, give them
	rest.

Agnus Dei, &c. dona	Lamb of God, &c.
eis requiem.	give them rest.

Agnus Dei, &c. dona	Lamb of God, &c.
eis requiem sempiter-	give them eternal rest.
nam.	

¶ *Standing in an inclined position, with his hands joined and resting on the Altar, and his eyes reverently fixed upon the Sacred Host, the Priest recites the following prayers, the first of which is omitted in Masses of the Dead.*

Domine Jesu Christe,	Lord Jesus Christ,
qui dixisti Apostolis tu-	who saidst to thy Apo-
is : Pacem relinquo vo-	stles, I leave you peace,
bis, pacem meam do vo-	I give you my peace ;
bis : ne respicias pecca-	regard not my sins, but
ta mea, sed fidem Eccle-	the faith of thy Church ;
siaë tuæ : eamque secun-	and grant her that peace
dum voluntatem tuam	and unity which are
pacificare et coadunare	agreeable to thy will :
digneris. Qui vivis et	Who livest and reignest
regnas Deus, per omnia	God, world without end.
sæcula sæculorum. A-	Amen.
men.	

¶ *At Solemn High Mass, the Deacon kisses the altar at the same time with the celebrating Priest, by whom he is saluted with the kiss of peace,<sup>(118)</sup> accompanied by these words:*

P. Pax tecum.

P. Peace be with thee.

¶ *To which the Deacon answers;*

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

R. And with thy spirit.

¶ *And then salutes, in like manner, the Sub-deacon, who conveys the kiss of peace to those amongst the clergy who may be assisting at Mass.*

Domine Jesu Christe,  
Fili Dei vivi, qui ex vo-  
luntate Patris, cooperan-  
te Spiritu Sancto, per  
mortem tuam mundum  
vivificasti: libera me per  
hoc sacrosanctum Cor-  
pus, et Sanguinem tuum,  
ab omnibus iniquitatibus  
meis et universis malis:  
et fac me tuis semper  
inhærere mandatis, et a  
tenunquam separari per-  
mittas; Qui cum eodem  
Deo Patre et Spiritu  
Sancto vivis et regnas  
Deus in sæcula sæculo-

Lord Jesus Christ,  
Son of the Living God,  
who, according to the  
will of thy Father, with  
the co-operation of the  
Holy Ghost, hast by thy  
death, given life to the  
world, deliver me by this  
thy most sacred Body  
and Blood from all my  
iniquities, and from all  
evils: and make me al-  
ways adhere to thy com-  
mandments, and never  
suffer me to be separat-  
ed from thee: who with  
the same God the Father

rum. Amen.

and the Holy Ghost, liv-  
est and reigneth God, for  
ever and ever. Amen.

Perceptio Corporis tui,  
Domine Jesu Christe,  
quod ego indignus sume-  
re præsumo, non mihi  
proveniat in iudicium et  
condemnationem: sed  
pro tuâ pietate, prosit  
mihi ad tutamentum  
mentis et corporis, et ad  
medelam percipiendam.  
Qui vivis et regnas cum  
Deo Patre in unitate  
Spiritus Sancti Deus,  
per omnia sæcula sæcu-  
lorum. Amen.

Let not the participa-  
tion of thy Body, O Lord  
Jesus Christ, which I,  
though unworthy, pre-  
sume to receive, turn to  
my judgment and con-  
demnation; but through  
thy mercy, may it be to  
me a safe-guard and re-  
medy, both of soul and  
body: Who with God the  
Father, in the unity of  
the Holy Ghost, livest  
and reigneth God, world  
without end. Amen.

¶ *Taking the Host in his hands, he says;*

Panem cœlestem acci-  
piam, et nomen Domini  
invocabo.

I will take the bread  
of heaven, and call upon  
the name of the Lord.

¶ *Striking his breast in humility and with devo-  
tion, he says three times;*<sup>(119)</sup>

Matt. c. viii. v. 8. Do-  
mine, non sum dignus,  
ut intres sub tectum

Matt. c. viii. v. 8. Lord  
I am not worthy that  
thou shouldst enter un-

meum : sed tantum dic	der my roof; but only
verbo, et sanabitur ani-	say the word and my
ma mea.	soul shall be healed.

¶ *Taking reverently both parts of the Sacred Host, in his right hand; and signing with it the sign of the Cross on himself,<sup>(120)</sup> he says the following prayer, and then receives.*

Corpus Domini nostri	May the Body of our
Jesu Christi custodiat	Lord Jesus Christ pre-
animam meam in vitam	serve my soul unto life
æternam. Amen.	everlasting. Amen.

¶ *After a short meditation on the stupendous mystery, he uncovers the chalice; adores, genuflecting, the sacred Blood: and then, with the most religious diligence, gathers upon the Paten, or silver Disk, the very smallest atoms<sup>(121)</sup> of the Host, which remain upon the corporal; (this is the small linen cloth upon which the species are deposited) these fragments he puts into the Chalice, which he then takes<sup>(122)</sup> in his hands, saying:*

Ps. cxv. Quid retribu-	Ps. cxv. What shall I
am Domino pro omnibus	render to the Lord, for
quæ retribuit mihi? Ca-	all the things that he
licem salutaris accipiam,	hath rendered to me? I
et nomen Domini invo-	will take the Chalice of
cabo. Laudans invocabo	Salvation; and I will
Dominum, et ab inimicis	call upon the name of

meis salvus ero.

the Lord. Praising I  
will call upon the Lord,  
and I shall be saved  
from my enemies.

¶ *Receiving the blood of our Saviour, he says ;*

Sanguis Domini nostri  
Jesu Christi, custodiat  
animam meam in  
vitam æternam. Amen.

The Blood of our  
Lord Jesus Christ pre-  
serve my soul unto ever-  
lasting life. Amen.

¶ *Taking the first Ablution he says ;*

Quod ore sumpsimus,  
Domine, pura mente ca-  
piamus, et de munere  
temporali, fiat nobis re-  
medium sempiternum.

Grant, O Lord, that  
what we have taken  
with our mouth, we may  
receive with a pure mind,  
that of a temporal gift,  
it may become to us an  
eternal remedy.

¶ *Taking the second Ablution he says ;*

Corpus tuum, Domi-  
ne quod sumpsi, et San-  
guis quem potavi, adhæ-  
reat visceribus meis, et  
præsta, ut in me non re-  
maneant scelerum macu-  
la, quem pura, et sancta  
refecerunt sacramenta.  
Qui vivis et regnas in sæ-

May thy Body, O Lord,  
which I have received,  
and thy Blood which I  
have drunk, cleave to  
my bowels ; and grant  
that no stain of sin may  
remain in me, who have  
been fed with thy pure  
and holy sacraments.

cula sæculorum. Amen. Who livest and reignest  
for ever and ever. Amen.

¶ *Then he returns to the Book and reads the  
Communion, which varies with the day.*

THE COMMUNION.<sup>(123)</sup>

<p>Benedicimus Deum cœli, et coram omnibus viventibus confitebimur ei: (<i>Tob. c. XII.</i>) quia fe- cit nobiscum misericor- diam suam.</p>	<p>We bless the God of heaven, and we will praise him in the sight of all the living: (<i>Tob. c. XII.</i>) because he hath shown his mercy to us.</p>
--	--

POST-COMMUNION.<sup>(124)</sup>

*Oremus.*

*Let us pray.*

<p>Proficiat nobis ad sa- lutem corporis et animæ, Domine Deus noster, hu- jussacramentisusceptio: et sempiternæ sanctæ Trinitatis ejusdemque individuæ unitatis con- fessio. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Chris- tum filium tuum: Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate Spiritus Sancti Deus: per omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen.</p>	<p>O Lord our God, may the reception of this sa- crament, together with the confession of the everlasting holy Trinity and of the undivided unity of the same, avail us, for the health both of our souls and bodies. Through our Lord Jesus Christ thy Son; who liveth and reigneth with thee in the unity of the Holy Ghost, one God,</p>
--	---



world without end. Amen.

OCCASIONAL POST-COMMUNIONS.

*Oremus.*

*Let us pray.*

Mundet et muniat nos, quæsumus Domine, divini sacramenti munus oblatum: et intercedente beata Virgine Dei genetrice Maria, cum beatis Apostolis tuis Petro et Paulo, atque beato N. et omnibus sanctis; a cunctis nos reddat et perversitatibus expiatis, et adversitatibus expeditos.

May the oblation of this divine sacrament, we beseech thee, O Lord, both cleanse and defend us; and the blessed Mary, the virgin mother of God, together with the, blessed Apostles Peter and Paul, and the blessed N. and all the saints interceding for us; render us expiated from all perversities, and free us from all adversities.

Gratiam tuam, quæsumus, Domine, mentibus nostris infunde: ut qui, Angelo nuntiante, Christi Filii tui incarnationem cognovimus; per passionem ejus et crucem, ad resurrectionis gloriam perducamur.

Pour forth, we beseech thee, O Lord, thy grace into our hearts, that we, who by the message of an Angel have known the incarnation of Christ, thy Son, may by his passion and cross, come to the glory of his resurrection.

**Libera, quæsumus, Domine, a peccatis et hostibus, famulos tuos, tibi supplicantes : ut in sancta conversatione viventes, nullis afficiantur adversis. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum filium tuum : Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate Spiritus Sancti, Deus : per omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen.**

**Deliver, O Lord, we beseech thee, from all sin, and from all enemies, thy servants, who offer their humble prayers to thee ; that leading holy lives, they may be attacked by no misfortunes. Through our Lord Jesus Christ thy Son : who liveth and reigneth with thee in the unity of the Holy Ghost, One God, world without end. Amen.**

**Hæc nos, quæsumus Domine, divini sacramenti perceptio protegat : et famulum tuum N. quem pastorem Ecclesiæ tuæ præesse voluisti, unà cum commisso sibi grege, salvet semper et muniat. Per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum filium tuum : Qui tecum vivit et regnat in unitate Spiritus Sancti, Deus : per omnia sæcula sæcu-**

**May the participation of this divine sacrament protect us, we beseech thee, O Lord ; and always procure safety and defence to thy servant N. whom thou hast appointed pastor over thy Church, together with the flock committed to his charge. Through our Lord Jesus Christ thy Son ; who liveth and reigneth with thee in**

lorum. Amen.

the unity of the Holy  
Ghost, One God, world  
without end. Amen.

¶ *Proceeding to the middle of the Altar, which he kisses, the Priest turns round and greets the People with ;*

P. Dominus vobis-  
cum.

P. The Lord be with  
you.

¶ *To which the Choir, or the Acolyte, answers ;*  
R. Et cum spiritu tuo.      R. And with thyspirit.

¶ *Then continuing with his face towards the People, he announces to them leave to depart.*

P. Ite, missa est.

P. Go, you are dis-  
missed.

¶ *To which is answered ;*

R. Deo Gratias.

R. Thanks be to God.

¶ *On those days however, on which the Angelic Hymn, Glory be to God on High, is omitted ; instead of dismissing the people with these words, the Priest, after having turned round towards the Altar, says ;*

P. Benedicamus Do-  
mino.

P. Let us bless the  
Lord.

¶ *In Masses of the Dead, instead of either of the foregoing salutations, is said;*

P. Requiescant in pace.      P. May they rest in peace.

¶ *To which is answered;*

R. Amen.

R. Amen.

¶ *At Solemn High Mass, it is the Deacon who chants the* *Ite, missa est, &c. &c.* <sup>(125)</sup>

¶ *Then bowing before the Altar, the Priest says;*

Placeat tibi, sancta Trinitas, obsequium servitutis meæ, et præsta: ut sacrificium quod oculis tuæ majestatis indignus obtuli, tibi sit acceptabile, mihi que, et omnibus, pro quibus illud obtuli, sit, te miserante, propitiabile. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

Let the performance of my homage be pleasing to thee, O holy Trinity, and grant that the sacrifice which I, though unworthy, have offered up in the sight of thy Majesty, may be acceptable to thee, and through thy mercy be a propitiation for me, and all those for whom it has been offered. Through Christ our Lord. Amen.

¶ *Then having kissed the Altar, he looks up towards Heaven and elevates his hands, which he afterwards joins, at the same time that he bows his head, saying in an audible voice:*

Benedicat vos omni-      May Almighty God,  
 potens Deus, Pater et      the Father, Son, † and  
 Filius, † et Spiritus      Holy Ghost; bless you.  
 Sanctus.

R. Amen.

R. Amen.

¶ *And having turned himself to the People, before he has entirely completed this prayer, he gives his blessing,<sup>(126)</sup> by making the sign of the Cross over them with his outstretched right hand: just as he invokes the persons of the Holy Trinity. (The Benediction is omitted at Masses of the Dead.) Then turning to the Gospel-side of the Altar, he says;*

P. Dominus vobis-      P. The Lord be with  
 cum.      you.

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.      R. And with thy spirit.

¶ *He then traces the sign of the Cross, first upon the Altar on the commencement of the Gospel; then upon his forehead, lips, and breast; and, afterwards, reads the particular Gospel appointed for the occasion; but more generally it happens that the Gospel of St. John is the proper one to be recited.*

P. † Initium sancti      P. † The beginning  
 Evangelii secundum Jo-      of the holy Gospel ac-  
 annem.      cording to St. John.

R. Gloria tibi, Do-      • R. Glory be to thee,  
 mine.      O Lord.

St. John, c. 1. In principio erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. Hoc erat in principio apud Deum. Omnia per ipsum facta sunt: et sine ipso factum est nihil, quod factum est: in ipso vita erat et vita erat lux hominum: et lux in tenebris lucet, et tenebræ eam non comprehenderunt. Fuit homo missus a Deo, cui nomen erat Joannes. Hic venit in testimonium, ut testimonium perhiberet de lumine: ut omnes crederent per illum. Non erat ille lux: sed ut testimonium perhiberet de lumine. Erat lux vera, quæ illuminat omnem hominem venientem in hunc mundum. In mundo erat, et mundus per ipsum factus est, et mundus eum non cognovit: in

St. John, c. 1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God: the same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by him; and without him was made nothing that was made. In him was life, and the life was the light of men; and the light shineth in darkness, and the darkness did not comprehend it. There was a man sent from God whose name was John; this man came for a witness, to give testimony of the light, that all men might believe through him: he was not the light, but was to give testimony of the light. That was the true light which enlighteneth every man that cometh into this world. He was in the world, and the

propria venit, et sui eum non receperunt. Quotquot autem receperunt eum, dedit eis potestatem filios Dei fieri, his qui credunt in nomine ejus: qui non ex sanguinibus, neque ex voluntate carnis, neque ex voluntate viri, sed ex Deo nati sunt. ET VERBUM CARO FACTUM EST, et habitavit in nobis: et vidimus gloriam ejus, gloriam quasi unigeniti à Patre, plenum gratiæ et veritatis.

world was made by him, and the world knew him not. He came into his own, and his own received him not. But as many as received him, he gave them power to be made the sons of God, to them that believe in his name, who are born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God. AND THE WORD WAS MADE FLESH,<sup>(127)</sup> and dwelt among us; and we saw his glory, the glory as it were, of the only begotten of the Father; full of grace and truth.

R. Deo gratias.

R. Thanks be to God.

¶ *The following V. R. and Prayer are in some Places said every Sunday and Holiday after Mass.*

V. Domine saluum fac  
Regem nostrum N.

V. O Lord save N.  
our King.

R. Et exaudi nos in

R. And hear us in the

die qua invocaverimus    day we call upon thee.  
te.

V. Gloria Patri et Fi-  
lio et Spiritui Sancto.

V. Glory be to the  
Father, and to the Son,  
and to the Holy Ghost.

R. Sicut erat in prin-  
cipio et nunc, et sem-  
per, et in sæcula sæcu-  
lorum. Amen.

R. As it was in the  
beginning, is now, and  
ever shall be, world with-  
out end. Amen.

*Oremus.*

*Let us pray.*

Quæsumus omnipo-  
tens Deus : ut famulus  
tuus N. Rex noster, qui  
tuâ miseratione susce-  
pit regni gubernacula,  
virtutem etiam omnium  
percipiat incrementa :  
quibus decenter ornatus,  
et vitiorum monstra de-  
vitare, et ad te, qui via,  
veritas, et vita es, gra-  
tiosus valeat pervenire.  
Per Dominum nostrum  
&c.

We beseech thee, O  
Almighty God, that thy  
servant N. our King,  
who by thy mercy, hath  
undertaken the govern-  
ment of these realms,  
may also receive an in-  
crease of all virtues,  
wherewith being adorn-  
ed, he may avoid every  
enormity of sin ; and  
come at length to thee,  
who art the way, the  
truth, and the life.  
Through Christ our  
Lord.

R. Amen.

R. Amen.



BENEDICTION WITH THE BLESSED SACRAMENT<sup>(128)</sup> AFTER MASS.

¶ *Having put incense into the thurible, the Priest takes the Blessed Sacrament out of the Tabernacle,<sup>(129)</sup> and enclosing it in the Ostensorium,<sup>(130)</sup> or, as it is sometimes called, Remonstrance, reposes it upon the Altar, with the appropriate genuflections both before and after. He then descends the steps, and kneeling down, incenses it; while the choir sings the hymn Tantum ergo Sacramentum, &c. Having recited the prayer Deus qui nobis, &c., the Priest is mantled with the Veil.<sup>(131)</sup> Then going up to the Altar, he adores,<sup>(132)</sup> and muffling his hands in the extremities of the Veil, takes up the Blessed Sacrament; and turning round slowly, and with the most religious reverence, blesses with it the people, who are the while profoundly bending in silent worship. The bell is rung during this ceremony, to announce when the solemn act of blessing commences and finishes, that all may know how long to continue bowed down in adoration. The Priest having replaced the Ostensorium upon the Altar, after genuflecting, descends and incenses it again; then lays aside the Veil, and deposits the Sacred Host in the Ciborium,<sup>(133)</sup> which he either replaces within the Tabernacle, or removes to the inner Sacristy.*

¶ *Whilst the Priest, at the commencement of Mass or of Vespers, during which there is what is called the exposition of the Blessed Sacrament, is taking the Expositorium out of the Tabernacle, and enthroning it under the canopy, the following hymn is generally sung.*

Tantum ergo Sacramen-	To this mysterious table
tum,	now
Veneremur cernui :	Our knees, our hearts,
	and sense we bow :
Et antiquum documen-	Let ancient rites resign
tum,	their place
Novo cedat ritui :	To nobler elements of
	grace :
Præstet fides supplemen-	What our weak senses
tum,	can't descry
Sensuum defectui.	Let stronger faith the
	want supply.
Genitori, genitoque,	To God the Father born
	of none,
Laus et jubilatio :	To Christ his co-eternal
	Son,
Salus, honor, virtus quo-	And Holy Ghost whose
que,	equal rays
Sit et benedictio :	From both proceed, be
	equal praise :
Procedenti ab utroque,	One honour, jubilee, and
	fame,

Compar sit laudatio.

Amen.

V. Panem de cœlo  
præstitisti eis. Alleluia.

R. Omne delectamen-  
tum in se habentem.  
Alleluia.

*Oremus.*

Deus, qui nobis, sub  
sacramento mirabili, pas-  
sionis tuæ memoriam re-  
liquisti: tribue quæsu-  
mus, ita nos corporis et  
sanguinis tui, sacra mys-  
teria venerari, ut re-  
demptionis tuæ fructum  
in nobis jugiter sentia-  
mus. Qui, &c.

For ever bless his glo-  
rious name. Amen.

V. Thou hast given  
them bread from Hea-  
ven. Alleluia.

R. Replenished with  
whatever is delicious.  
Alleluia.

*Let us pray.*

O God, who in this  
wonderful sacrament,  
has left us a perpetual  
memorial of thy passion:  
grant us, we beseech  
thee, so to reverence the  
sacred mysteries of thy  
body and blood, as in  
our souls to be always  
sensible of the redemp-  
tion thou hast purchased  
for us. Who livest, &c.

¶ *Whilst giving Benediction, is frequently sung  
the following hymn.*

O Salutaris Hostia!	O saving Host! that
	Heaven's gate
Quæ Cœli pandis osti-	Laidst open at so dear
um:	a rate:

<b>Bella premunt hostilia :</b>	<b>Intestine wars invade</b>
	<b>our breast ;</b>
<b>Da robur, fer auxilium.</b>	<b>Be thou our strength,</b>
	<b>support, and rest.</b>
<b>2. Uni trinoque Domino,</b>	<b>2. To God the Father</b>
	<b>and the Son,</b>
<b>Sit sempiterna gloria,</b>	<b>And Holy Spirit Three</b>
	<b>in One,</b>
<b>Qui vitam sine termino,</b>	<b>Be endless praise : may</b>
	<b>He above</b>
<b>Nobis donet in patria.</b>	<b>With life eternal crown</b>
	<b>our love.</b>



**NOTES**  
**ON THE**  
**RUBRICS.**



## NOTES, &c.

---

(1)

For the origin of Holy-Water, and the form of blessing it ; see Chapter XIII, Part 2.

(2)

A sprig of the Hyssop-plant was used for sprinkling the water of purification on the people under the Mosaic dispensation ;\* and at the going out of the children of Israel, they were commanded to dip a bunch of hyssop in the blood of the paschal-lamb, and sprinkle their door-posts with it.†

(3)

The English word Mass, in Latin Missa, is derived from the word Missio. It was the practice in the primitive Church, during the celebration of the mysteries of the Lord's Supper, to dismiss from the assembly, at a certain part, all those who had not been perfectly initiated into the truths of the Gospel, and admitted to the communion of the

---

\* *Numb. C. xix. V. 18.*

† *Exod. C. xii. V. 22.*



faithful: this was denominated the 'Missio' or the Dismissal, whence is formed the Latin abbreviation Missa, and the English Mass. See Chap. III. Part 2.

The derivation of the term by which the principal afternoon service is designated, is somewhat similar. Vespers, or Evening Song, constitute the sixth amongst the Seven Canonical Hours, as those forms of prayer are called, which each Ecclesiastic, from the Subdeacon upwards, is bound to repeat every day, either in public or in private. The term, Vespers, is derived from Vesper, the star that appears towards sunset, the time appointed by ancient usage, for the recital of Evening Song.\*

The antiquity of this form of prayer may be traced back to the earlier ages of the Church; since it is not only especially noticed in the Apostolic Constitutions,† but mentioned by St. Basil, St. Ambrose, and St. Jerom; the last of whom denominates it the 'Hora Lucernaris,'—or time of lighting lamps at the decline of day.

It may be proper to observe, that the Vestment, which, in most places, is worn by the officiating priest at Vespers, is the Cope; for an account of

\* *Vespera fit quando Sol occidit. St. August. Serm. in Psalm. 29. Vespera a sidere quod Vesper nuncupatur, et decedente sole exoritur. Isidorus de Eccl. Offic. C. 22, et Etym. L. 6, C. 35.*

† *Ἑσπερας γενομένης συναθροίσαις την εκκλησίαν ᾧ επισκοπε καὶ μετὰ το ρηθῆναι τον επιλύχνιον ψαλμον. Lib. viii. C. 35. Apud Labbeum. Concil. Gen. tom. 1. p. 499.*

which the reader may consult No. 59, Ch. XII. on the Vestments.

## (4)

The use of Images in the house of God, is authorized by Scripture. Moses was commanded to place the images of two Cherubim upon the Ark; (*Exod. Ch. xxv. and xxvi.*) and Solomon 'carved all the walls of the Temple round about with divers figures and carvings.' (*3 Kings, Ch. vi. V. 29.*) By making a reverence before the crucifix, Catholics do not intend to worship the image of their divine Redeemer, but the Redeemer himself. All denominations of Christians, as well as Catholics, bow the head when they hear the sacred name of Jesus pronounced: Catholics bow also when they behold his figure. The sound and the figure are both images of Jesus. No sensible Protestant will ever raise an objection to that inferior respect which Catholics exhibit towards the cross and the images of Jesus; since he will remember that, in receiving the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper, according to the rites of the Established Church of England, each communicant is obliged to kneel down to the sacramental elements, though he verily believes them to be nothing more than common bread and wine—mere figures of the body and blood of Christ. The reader is referred to Ch. x. in the second part of this work, for several observations on the Catholic practice of employing Images. The anti-

quity of the custom of setting up Crucifixes in Churches, and the reason of placing one upon the Altar, are both noticed in Ch. ix, Numb. 6 and 7.

## (5)

Consult Ch. ix. for the antiquity and meaning of the sign of the Cross.

## (6)

There are two forms which the Church employs for offering up the Eucharistic Sacrifice; one called *High Mass*; the other, *Low Mass*. Both are the same in essence, and differ in the ceremonies\* only, which are more numerous and solemn in the celebration of High, than in that of Low Mass. By Solemn High Mass, it is intended to signify the Mass at which a Deacon and Subdeacon minister.

The Roman Missal prescribes that we should kneel during the whole of Low Mass, except at the recital of the two Gospels, and the Creed (should there be one). If, therefore, ill health, or weakness do not compel us to sit down occasionally, we ought to comply with the Rubric, and hear Mass in a kneeling posture, which is the one most becoming a sinner who is present at the commemoration of the death of his crucified Redeemer.

Through a devotional respect for the blessed

---

\* For some observations on the use of Ceremonies in general, see Ch. viii, Part 2.

Eucharist, the priest who celebrates Mass, as well as those who receive the holy communion, are fasting from the previous midnight. That this custom of receiving the blessed Sacrament fasting, was instituted by the Apostles, may be gathered from a passage in the writings of Tertullian. (*Ad Uxor. Lib. 2, Ch. v.*)

## (7)

Acolytes constitute the highest of the four minor orders in the Latin Church, in which they have been employed, from the remotest antiquity, to perform the inferior ministry at the Altar. St. Cornelius who suffered martyrdom in 254, and his African contemporary, St. Cyprian, \* in their epistles, severally mention these subordinate clerks. The Roman pontiff, in that part of his letter to Fabius, † where he enumerates the clergy of Rome, says that there were 'forty-six priests, seven deacons, seven subdeacons, forty-two acolytes, exorcists, and lectors, together with fifty-two door-keepers.' The fourth Council of Carthage, celebrated in the year 398, takes especial notice of the form of their ordination; and directs, that 'when an acolyte is ordained, let him be instructed by the bishop how he is to perform his office. But let him receive from the archdeacon the candlestick, with a wax taper, that he may know that to

---

\* Epist. LV. *apud Labb. tom. i. p. 691.* † *Apud Euseb. Lib. vi. C. 43.*

him has been consigned the duty of lighting the lights of the church. And let him receive an empty cruets, to supply wine for the Eucharist of the blood of Christ." \* The same formula is recited in the sacramentary of St. Gregory. The term is Greek, and derived from the word *Ακολουθος*, which signifies a young servant or attendant. One amongst their most conspicuous offices within the sanctuary is, as St. Isidore informs us, † to bear about the wax tapers. It has been the custom for several centuries to allow lay persons, even youths, to discharge the ministry at the holy sacrifice and other functions, without having the ordination of acolytes. The cassock and surplice, the ecclesiastical garments which they are allowed to wear, are severally described in Chapter XII. on Vestments, at Nos. 9 and 63.

## (8)

This mark † whenever it is found, expresses that the Priest, at those words to which it is affixed, makes the sign of the Cross; for some remarks on which, see Ch. IX.

---

\* Acolythus cum ordinatur, ab episcopo quidem doceatur qualiter in officio suo agere debeat. Sed ab archidiacono accipiat ceroferarium cum cereo, ut sciat se ad accendenda ecclesiæ luminaria mancipari. Accipiat et urceolum vacuum, ad suggerendum vinum in eucharistiam sanguinis Christi. *Conc. Gen. Labbei*, tom. ii. p. 1200.

† See Note 37, p. 99.

## (9)

Before commencing the Psalm, the Priest recites a versicle of it ; ' I will go,' &c. called the Antiphon, which, as its two Greek component words indicate, signifies a reciprocal voice or sound. He and his two assistants alternately repeat the verses of this introductory Psalm. Such an alternation in singing or reciting Psalms and Hymns, may be traced up to the earliest ages of the Church. So ancient is it, that its introduction is attributed \* to St. Ignatius, a disciple of the Apostles. † In the Church service it is usual to select, very often from the Psalm itself about to be commenced, some verse which is repeated both before and after saying it. Sometimes the same verse or Antiphon is repeated by one side of the Choir, at the closing of each verse of the Psalm, the whole of which is recited by the other. As there is no portion of the Psalter more appropriate for the ministers of God to recite when about to offer up sacrifice, than this verse ;—' I will go unto the Altar of God,'—it has in consequence been chosen as the Antiphon to the Psalm ;—' Judge me,' &c. and directed to be said on every occasion by the Priest at the commencement of Mass.

---

\* *Socrates, Lib. 6. C. viii.*

† St. Ignatius, who suffered martyrdom at Rome under Trajan, was appointed by St. Peter to fill the Episcopal Chair of Antioch, on the death of Evodius, the immediate successor in that See, of the Prince of the Apostles.

## (10)

This Psalm, on account of the expressions of joy which it contains, is omitted at Masses of the Dead; and during Passion-time, that is, the fortnight before Easter.

## (11)

This is denominated the minor Doxology, or short hymn of Glory. The first part of it—‘Glory be to the Father and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost;’ is presumed to have been framed by the Apostles.\* The second portion;—‘as it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end, Amen;’ is ascribed to the Council of Nice assembled in the year 325, and was appended by the Nicene Fathers as a contradiction to the doctrines of Arius, who maintained that the Son was not in the beginning, nor equal to the Father.†

The custom still observed by the people of standing up at Vespers, during the ‘Glory be to the Father,’ &c. and of the choir bursting out in-

---

\* That the first of the two versicles which compose the ‘Glory be to the Father,’ was in use as a prayer amongst the faithful, anterior to the Council of Nice, is certain. St. Basil, who lived a little more than forty years after it was held, notices, in his letter to Amphilochius, this hymn, as ancient; and the illustrious St. Athanasius, who flourished at the time the Council of Nice was celebrated, in referring to this Doxology, makes no mention of its being then but recently introduced.

† Opera Benedicti xiv. *De Sac. Missæ*, C. iii. V. 19.

to a louder chorus, no doubt owes its origin to the same cause which introduced this Doxology at the close of each Psalm. To express their belief in the doctrine of the holy and undivided Trinity, it appears that the people were instructed to stand up, and mingle their voices with the swelling strain of the choir, and thus proclaim their loud and unanimous assent to that dogma, as if it were by acclamation. The antiquity of this rite is attested by Cassianus, who flourished about the year 424, when he incidentally mentions it, and not as if of recent introduction, but as a ceremony established throughout Gaul at the time when he was writing. ‘In this province,’ (Gaul) remarks that author, ‘at the conclusion of a Psalm, all standing up, unite in singing together, in a loud strain, *Glory be to the Father,*’ &c.\*

At a later period, Theodemarus, Abbot of Monte Casino, notices the standing up, and the inclination of the head during the recital of the “*Glory be to the Father,*” as a rite of ancient institution.†

(12)

While reciting the prayer ‘*I confess,*’ &c. the Priest, with his hands joined, lowly bends down

\* In hac provincia (Gallia) in clausula psalmi, omnes adstantes concinunt cum clamore; Gloria Patri et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto. *Cass. Lib. 2. C. viii.*

† Sicut et alia quæ a majoribus instituta servamus, stamus, flectimus cervicem, quoties Gloria canitur. *Epist. ad Theodorum apud Paulum Diaconum.*



his head, to express his confusion for his sinfulness, and to imitate the humble 'Publican, who would not so much as lift up his eyes towards heaven.'\*

## (13)

At these words, he strikes his breast. This manner of expressing grief for sin, is both ancient and scriptural. The Publican mentioned in the Gospel,† struck his breast, saying, 'O God, be merciful to me a sinner;' and at the Crucifixion, 'the multitude that saw the things that were done, returned striking their breasts.'‡ The striking of the breast is meant to signify, not only that we are indignant against this bosom of ours, which has so often rebelled against Heaven; but that we desire that it may be bruised and softened by compunction; and that the stony heart may be exchanged for one of flesh.§ In the Old as well as in the New Law, the Confession of Sins has invariably preceded Sacrifice. The High-Priest under the Mosaic dispensation, before he offered the emissary goat, was directed 'to confess all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their offences and sins.'||

Some Protestants have objected, that, in this prayer, Catholics make a confession of their sins,

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xviii. V. 13.* † *Ibid.*

‡ *St. Luke, C. xxiii. V. 48.* § *Ezek. C. xi. V. 19.*

|| *Levit. C. xvi. V. 21.*

not only to God; but also to the Saints. In answer to this, it should be observed, that we here confess, not only to the Saints in Heaven, but also to our brethren upon earth; and, in both instances, we employ the same expression: and thus we comply with the injunction of St. James, who says, ‘confess your sins one to another.’\* Now as it is not the slightest derogation from God’s honour to confess to sinners on earth, it is impossible to conceive how it can be unlawful to confess our guilt, and acknowledge our transgressions, to the Saints in Heaven, who are, at the day of final retribution, to sit in judgement on us; for it was thus that our divine Redeemer addressed his Apostles;—‘Amen, I say to you, when the Son of Man shall sit on the seat of his Majesty, you also shall sit on twelve seats, judging the twelve tribes of Israel;’† and St. Paul exclaims;—‘know you not that the Saints shall judge this world?’‡ An almost similar form of confession, with its absolution, may be seen in the Pœnitential drawn up by Egbert, who was archbishop of York in 732.

Concerning the Invocation of Angels and Saints, the reader is referred to Ch. v. Part 2.

## (14)

Not only did the Archangel Gabriel salute the Blessed Virgin Mary with this respectful language;

---

\* *St. James, C. v. V. 16.*      † *St. Matt. C. xix. V. 28.*

‡ *1 Cor. C. vi. V. 2.*

—‘Hail, full of grace, the Lord is with thee, Blessed art thou amongst women;’\* but she herself, under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, declared that†—‘all generations should call her blessed.’ By this prayer, Catholics partly realize this prophetic declaration uttered by—‘the mother of our Lord.’

## (15)

Of the Archangel Michael, it is said in the prophecy of Daniel;—‘Michael shall rise up, the great prince, who standeth for the Children of thy people.’‡

## (16)

St. John Baptist was, as it were, the conclusion of the Old, and the beginning of the New Testament. He was—‘the Angel sent before the face’ of the Redeemer. He was—‘the voice of one crying in the desert, prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight his paths.’ It was he who preached the Baptism of penance unto the remission of sins.§

## (17)

It was to St. Peter that Jesus Christ made this splendid promise;—‘Thou art Peter, and upon

---

\* *St. Luke, C. i. V. 28.*

† *Ibid. C. i. V. 48.*

‡ *Dan. C. xii. V. 1.*

§ *St. Mark, C. i. V. 2, 3, 4.*

this rock I will build my Church, and the gates of Hell shall not prevail against it. And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of Heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, it shall be bound also in Heaven, and whatsoever thou shalt loose upon earth, it shall be loosed also in Heaven.\*—St. Paul was associated with St. Peter in preaching the Gospel at Rome, and in founding the Roman Church, of which the first Pope or Bishop was St. Peter.

(18)

The Saints in Heaven are addressed in this prayer for three reasons. I. Their perfect Charity, or love of God, induces them to feel a concern about every offence that is perpetrated against their heavenly Sovereign. II. They take particular interest about every thing which regards us here below, and participate in that 'joy which is in Heaven upon one sinner that doth penance.'† III. Because it not unfrequently happens that Almighty God grants, through the intercession of his favourites, the pardon which he denies to the sinner himself. The Lord thus spoke to Abimelech;—'Abraham shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live,‡ and he likewise said to the friends of Job; —'Go to my servant Job: and my servant Job

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xvi. V. 18, 19.* † *St. Luke, C. xv. V. 7.*

‡ *Gen. C. xx. V. 7.*

shall pray for you ; his face I will accept, that folly be not imputed to you.\* See Ch. v. Part 2.

## (19)

St. James bids us to confess our sins ‘one to another.’†

## (20)

When we address ourselves to God, we say ;— ‘have mercy on us.’ When we address ourselves to Saints, to Angels, or to men, we say ;— ‘pray for us.’

## (21)

The words— ‘Dominus vobiscum,’ or ‘The Lord be with you’—are found in several passages of the Old Testament. ‘Booz said to the reapers ;—the Lord be with you. And they answered him : The Lord bless thee.’‡ Such, too, was the salutation of the Angel Gabriel to the Blessed Virgin Mary.§ The response ;— ‘and with thy spirit,’—is furnished by those words of St. Paul to Timothy ;— ‘The Lord Jesus Christ be with thy spirit.’||

## (22)

The Priest kisses the Altar, out of respect and affection towards that spot on which Jesus Christ

---

\* *Job, C. xlii. V. 8.*

† *St. James, C. v. V. 16.*

‡ *Ruth, C. ii. V. 4.*

§ *St. Luke, C. i. V. 28.*

|| *2 Tim. C. iv. V. 22.*

is daily immolated : for we may well exclaim with St. Optatus Milevitanus, who flourished towards the year 308;—‘ what is the Altar but the seat of the Body and Blood of Christ? \* The use of Altars in the Church, and the respect which has been invariably manifested towards them from the earliest ages, will be noticed in a separate Chapter.

The Priest is directed to kiss that part of the Altar where is placed the stone under which it is usual to deposit the Relics of some Saint or Martyr. Thus there is furnished another testimonial of reverence to our divine Redeemer, through the respect which is exhibited towards the earthly remains of those who have exemplified his precepts by their virtues, or sealed the profession of his doctrines with their blood. In the earliest ages of the Church, the holy Sacrifice of the Mass used to be offered on the tombs of the Martyrs; and hence arose the custom of enclosing a portion of their Relics in the Altar-Stone. It is but becoming, that beneath our earthly Altars, should repose the Relics of the Saints, since St. John remarks of them in his vision of the heavenly sacrifice;—‘ I saw under the Altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held. † For some remarks on the veneration which the Catholic Church pays to Relics, see Part 2. Ch. vi.

---

\* Quid enim est Altare nisi sedes corporis et sanguinis Christi.  
*Adv. Parmen. Lib. vi. p. 91.*

† *Apoc. C. vi. V. 9.*

## (23)

By the express command of God, the use of Incense was very frequent in the service of the Jewish Temple.\*

## (24)

This portion of the Service is called the **INTROIT** or entrance; because, at solemn High Masses, the Choir usually chants it as the Priest is approaching the Altar. It is composed of two or three versicles selected from the Psalms, or other parts of Scripture.

## (25)

‘Kyrie eleison’ are two Greek words, which signify ‘Lord have mercy.’ Such a petition is most appropriately recited at the commencement of the tremendous mysteries. Then it is that we should supplicate the mercies of Heaven in cries like those of the blind men of Jericho;† with the perseverance of the Canaanean mother,‡ and as humbly as the ten lepers.§—‘Kyrie eleison’ is repeated, three times, in honour of God the Father; ‘Christe eleison,’ three times, in honour of God the Son; and ‘Kyrie eleison,’ three times, in honour of God the Holy Ghost.

## (26)

This has been denominated the Angelic Hymn, because it commences with the words chanted by

---

\* *Exod. C. xl. V. 5.*

*St. Luke, C. i. V. 10, 11.*

† *St. Matt. C. xx. V. 30.* ‡ *St. Matt. C. xv. V. 22, &c.*

§ *St. Luke, C. xvii. V. 13.*

Angelic voices in the midnight air at the birth of our divine Redeemer, which was announced to the shepherds by an Angel zoned in light, with whom —‘ there was a multitude of the heavenly army, praising God, and saying, Glory be to God in the Highest, and on earth peace to men of good will.’\* This Canticle, as the fathers of the fourth Council of Toledo, celebrated in the year 633, observed, consists of the strain sung by the multitude of the heavenly array, and of pious aspirations composed by the pastors of the Church. The Greeks call it the great Doxology.

In commencing this hymn, so beautiful for its devout sentiments, and venerable for its antiquity, the Priest outstretches and elevates his hands, and turns his eyes towards heaven. A pious sensibility naturally dictates such gestures. They exhibit in a feeling manner those inward profound emotions, and that religious elevation of the soul, experienced by the fervent Christian; and testify, that whilst his lips are resounding with those angel-notes of praise—Glory be to God on High—they echo but the accents of a heart that sighs to embrace and retain the joys of Heaven for all eternity. The inclination of the head at the name of God, is to manifest our worship of God, made man for our redemption. At the conclusion, he makes the sign of the Cross, according to the custom of the an-

---

\* *St. Luke, C. ii. V. 13, 14, &c.*



cient Christians, who sanctified\* all their principal actions by calling to their minds the sacrifice of Christ's atonement by this holy symbol. The 'Gloria in excelsis.' being a canticle of gladness, is consequently omitted at Masses said in black for the Dead; and also during the penitential seasons of Lent, Advent, &c. unless the Mass be of some Saint.

## (27)

The Priest bows down before the Altar, because he who wishes to communicate a benediction unto others, must, first of all, by his humility, incline Heaven to bestow the blessing he desires to impart. He kisses the Altar because it is the throne of Jesus. He turns round towards the congregation, because he speaks a holy greeting: and he holds his arms extended to signify, by such a natural expression of sincere and warm affection, that he is acting in the name of Jesus, the loving Father of his people.

## (28)

Nothing can be more impressive than this scriptural and very ancient custom of extending the arms during the time of prayer. It was thus that Moses prayed upon the mountain, while the Children of Israel were combating on the plain with the Amalekites.† The Psalmist makes frequent men-

---

\* Chapter on the Cross, No. 3.

† *Exod. C. xvii. V. 11.*

tion of it. 'Hear, O Lord,' he cries,—'the voice of my supplication when I lift my hands to thy holy temple'\*—'Lift up your hands to the holy place'†—'I stretched forth my hands to thee.‡ St. Paul refers to this ceremony when he says:—'I will that men pray..... lifting up pure hands.'§ That such was the method of praying observed amongst the primitive Christians, is evident both from the testimony of the earliest writers of the Church, and from those monuments of Christian antiquity which are extant. Tertullian, in his book on prayer,¶ and Prudentius, in his hymn on the Martyrdom of St. Fructuosus,|| particularly mention it. In the fresco-paintings with which the Christians of the first ages adorned the chambers of their Catacombs at Rome, are still visible many figures with outstretched hands, in the act of praying.\* An illustration of such a rite may be seen in Ch. XII. on Vestments, No. 29, where is given the figure of a veiled female in the act of prayer. The Sarcophagi which contained the bodies,† and the Cippi, or marble slabs that covered the tombs of the Martyrs,‡ as well as articles of

---

\* *Ps. xxvii. V. 2. Protest. Trans. Ps. xxviii, &c.*

† *Ps. cxxxii. V. 2. Protest. Trans. Ps. cxxxiv.*

‡ *Ps. cxlii. V. vi. Protest. Trans. Ps. cxliii, &c.*

§ *1 Tim. C. ii. V. 8. ¶ C. xi. et xiii. || Hymn. vi. V. 107.*

\* *Aringhii, Roma Subterranea, vol. i. pp. 541, 565, 581, & 585.*

† *Bottari, Roma Sotterranea, plate cxxxvi.*

‡ *Aringhii, vol. i. p. 606.*

domestic furniture,\* exhibit figures in similar positions. Anciently this gesture was common both to the Clergy and Laity during the time of prayer; but now, with the exception of some places in the southern parts of Germany, where the people still employ it in the Churches,† it is observed by the Priest only.

## (29)

Amongst ancient ecclesiastical authors, the word 'Collect' signifies a meeting of the faithful for the purposes of prayer.‡

In the early times of Christianity, it was usual for the people to assemble in a particular Church on fast-days, but especially during the season of public calamity, in order afterwards to proceed in regular procession to another church previously determined upon, for the celebration of what was called, in the language of the period, a station.§

---

\* *Buonarruoti, Vasi Antichi di vetro*, plates xviii. and xxi.

† The writer particularly noticed this custom at Munich, where he observed numbers of people at the Cathedral and other churches, praying with outstretched hands, and in a posture exactly resembling the one so often to be seen on ancient Christian monuments.

‡ In the writings of the Fathers the following expressions; *collectas agere*—*congregari ad collectam*—which are of frequent occurrence, are to be understood in this sense.

§ The ceremony was denominated 'station,' because it was at the second Church that the procession stopped to hear Mass, and listen to a sermon. It was on occasion of these stations that Pope St. Gregory, the Apostle of England, preached the major part of his Homilies to the Roman people.

When the Clergy and the people had assembled at the place appointed, the Bishop, or the Priest who was to officiate, recited over the collected multitude a short prayer, which, from the circumstance, was denominated the Collect, or the gathering prayer.\*

2. As the Mass is the principal service of the Church, for the celebration of which the faithful are collected; we see the propriety of denominating by the term Collect, that prayer which the Priest puts up to God in behalf of those amongst his servants who have come together to adore him. In fact, the ancient mode of saying the Collect, furnishes another warrant for the propriety of such a designation. Before the Celebrant began the prayer itself, he exhorted, as he does now, the people to offer their petitions to heaven, by saying—‘Let us pray.’—The Deacon then proclaimed aloud—‘Let us kneel down’—and, after a pause, which was employed by all present in silent supplication, that minister a second time cried out;—‘Stand up again.’—The Priest then rising from his knees, prayed aloud.† Though not the name, the

---

\* In the Sacramentary of St. Gregory, there are two prayers for the Feast of the Purification: the first is entitled;—The Collect at St. Hadrian’s—the church at which the Clergy and people met, before proceeding to St. Mary Major’s, where the second was recited as the Collect in the Mass of the Festival.

† An illustrious Father of the Greek Church, St. Basil, who died in the year 379, refers, in his book on the Holy Ghost, c. xxvii. to this ceremony, which is still observed throughout the Latin

form however, of prayer, which we have in the Collect, may be traced up to Apostolic origin. Many of the occasional Collects now in use, are proved, by referring to the Sacramentaries of Popes Gelasius and Gregory, to have been composed more than thirteen hundred years ago.

It may, in conclusion, be observed, that as it is the official duty of the Priest to stand between the Altar of God and the people, to collect the vows and the petitions of those around him, and offer them up altogether to the throne of grace and mercy, hence the formula employed for such a purport, has been very properly, from this circumstance alone, denominated Collect,—from the collection which the pastor makes of the prayers of his flock, and from his afterwards compressing in one common summary, the requests of each single individual.

(30)

By making a reverence before the Crucifix, by bowing his head as he pronounces the sacred name of Jesus, and by kissing the text of the Gospel; the Priest intends to honour and worship, not an image, nor a book, nor a sound, but Jesus Christ himself in heaven, who is represented and called

---

Church, at the Quatuor Tempora, or Ember days, on Good Friday, and Holy Saturday; with this only difference, that at High Mass the Sub-deacon, and at Low Mass the Acolyte, without allowing any time to transpire in a pause, says;—"Stand up again."

to his remembrance by these several sensible signs and figures. To these symbols of Jesus, the Priest exhibits no more honour than the Jewish priesthood, by an express command of God, manifested to the Ark of the Testament, and to the Temple. The Catholic neither worships nor prays to, nor reposes any trust in images, as the Heathens did in their idols; nor does he believe any power or virtue to reside in them. He is expressly taught by his Church—‘that images have neither life nor sense to help him.’ (*Concilium Trident.* Sess. 25, and *the first Catechism.*) For some further observations upon Images, see Part 2, Ch. x.

## (31)

Such an admonition is addressed by the Priest to his congregation for the purpose of warning them that his prayers are for the common benefit; and of assuring them that it will be in vain for him to lift up his hands towards heaven in their behalf, unless they also elevate their hearts at the same moment.

## (32)

The Acolyte in the name of the people answers; —‘Amen’—at the end of the Collect, Post-communion, &c. and thus ratifies what the Priest has been saying, according to the custom of the Jews, and primitive Christians. Amen is a Hebrew word employed to confirm what has been announced;

and according to the tenor of the discourse to which it is appended, signifies, either—‘that is true,’—or—‘may it be so,’—or—‘I agree to that.’ It is, in reality, a form of speech indicative of an assertion, a desire, or a consent. 1. When the *Amen* is uttered after a declaration of the truths of Faith, as for instance the Creed, it is a simple assertion, and signifies,—‘that is true.’ 2. The *Amen* indicates a wish, when it follows a prayer in which the Priest expresses a desire for some blessing or a spiritual good ; for example, the conversion of nations, health of soul and body, and rest to the spirits of departed brethren. 3. When the Priest recites a prayer which pledges us to the performance of any thing, the *Amen* repeated after it, declares our determination to comply with the engagement.

## (33)

For some remarks on the Intercession of Saints, see Part 2, Ch. v.

## (34)

The Jews commenced the public service of their Sabbath by reading Moses and the Prophets :\* the first Christians followed their example, and during divine worship on the Sunday, read passages from the Old or New Testament. † But as these

---

\* *Acts*, C. xiii. V. 15.

† *Tertul. Apol. C. xxxix.*

extracts were more generally made from the letters of St. Paul the Doctor of the Gentiles, this scriptural lecture received the appellation of the Epistle. The Epistle of each Sunday is taken from the letters of St. Paul, or of the other Apostles, and according to Alcuin,\* not without a spiritual meaning ; for in causing the writings of God's envoys, to be recited previous to the lecture of the Gospel, the Church appears to imitate the example of Jesus Christ, who deputed some among his disciples to go before him into those quarters which he was about to honour with a visit. It is thought that the present distribution of Epistles and Gospels throughout the year, was arranged by St. Jerom at the desire of Pope Damasus about the year 376.

Portions of the sacred writings are read during the recital of all the other offices of the Church. At Vespers, for instance, is said the Little Chapter, which is a short lecture, containing a few sentences selected from some portion of the Old or New Testament. It is mentioned as early as the sixth century, by the Council of Agde, in Gaul, celebrated in the year 506. The Venerable Bede, in speaking of the Little Chapter, says, ' that in imitation of the children of Israel, who, in the time of Ezra, used to read four times during the day out of the Volume of the Law, a practice was

---

\* *Alcuinus de divin. Offic.* Alcuin was an Englishman, and flourished towards the year 780.



introduced into the Church of reciting a lecture, from the Sacred Scriptures, after each portion of the daily psalmody, known at present under the appellation of the Canonical Hours.\*

## (35)

After the Epistle, in order to unite prayer with instruction, the whole, or part of one of the Psalms is recited; and this anthem is called the GRADUAL; from an ancient custom which once prevailed of chanting it on the Gradus, that is, steps of the Ambo or Pulpit,† in which the Epistle used to be recited.‡ These versicles composing the Gradual, used to be chanted sometimes by one chorister alone, without any pause or interruption; sometimes alternately and by many voices which responded one to another. When the chanting was performed by one voice, and without interruption, it was distinguished by the appellation of TRACT, from the Latin *Tractim*—‘without ceasing.’ When it was sung by several of the Choir, or by the whole congregation who took up some of the strophes, it was called the Anthem sung in versical and response. Hence the origin

---

\* Beda, Lit. iii. Expos. in Esdram, C. xxviii.

† These Ambones are still to be seen in some of the oldest churches at Rome, such as St. Clement's, St. Laurence's and several others.

\* *Rabanus Maurus*, L. 1, C. xxxii. He wrote in the ninth Century.

of the generic term Gradual, and of the specific ones, Tract and Response.

(36)

As there is something plaintive and melancholy in solemn, long-drawn strains of a single voice, the Tract is chanted in penitential seasons, or during the time the Church is occupied in commemorating the passion of our divine Redeemer. But during the period that the Church is busied in solemnizing the joyful mysteries of our religion, at Easter and on those Sundays when she more particularly commemorates the Resurrection of her Spouse, and on other festivals, the swell and harmony of many voices blended together, and the bursts of alternate Choirs singing Alleluia, are admirably adapted to exhibit her joy; and hence the versicle commenced and finishes with that word of jubilation. ALLELUIA is a Hebrew term which signifies—‘praise the Lord:’—but as it expresses a transport of joy which cannot be adequately rendered by any term in Greek or Latin, it has been retained in its original form. Tobias, wishing to signify the joy which is to distinguish the flourishing periods of the Church of Christ, or of the New Jerusalem, proclaims that ‘Alleluia shall be sung in all its streets;’\* and St. John assures us that the inhabitants of Heaven hymn their praises in Alleluias.†

---

\* *Tob. C. xiii. V. 22.*

† *Apocal. C. xix.*

There are certain Rhythms which, on particular festivals, are chanted after the 'Gradual;' and hence receive the denomination of Sequences; but are also called Proses, because, though written in a species of verse, they are not fettered by any of the recognized laws of metre. The introduction of these hymns into the Liturgy, is thought to have originated in the devotion of B. Notkerus, Abbot of the Monastery of the Irish St. Gall, in the diocese of Constance, towards the closing of the ninth century.\* Of the many Sequences or Proses which have been composed, four only are inserted in the Roman Missal. The first of them is the 'Victimæ Paschali,' &c. sung at Easter, and which, according to Durandus,† is the production of Robert, King of the Franks, in the eleventh century: the second is the 'Veni Sancte Spiritus,' &c. for Pentecost, and is considered to have been written in the eleventh century also, by B. Hermannus Contractus; the third is the 'Lauda Sion,' &c. for the feast of Corpus Christi, and is ascribed to St. Thomas of Aquino: the fourth is the justly celebrated 'Dies iræ,' &c. which issued from the pious pen of Cardinal Latino Orsini, a Dominican friar who flourished in the thirteenth century.‡ The beautiful and celebrated hymn, 'Stabat Mater dolorosa,' is attributed to Pope Innocent III. by Pagi, in the life which he wrote of that Pontiff.§

---

\* Notkerus died in 912.

† *Lib. iv. C. 22.*

‡ Benedictus xiv. *de Sacrificio Missæ, Lib. ii. C. 5, Sect. xviii.*

§ Georgius, *De Liturgia Romani Pontificis*, tom. ii. p. 218.

The use of hymns is coeval with the Christian Church; and many of those now in use, are the compositions of some of the most illustrious Fathers and Saints of the fourth and succeeding centuries, who wrote several in honour of the Apostles and Martyrs.\*

## (37)

St. Jerom, who flourished about the year 376, refers to this ceremony in his able answer to Vigilantius, whom he thus addresses:—‘Throughout all the churches of the East, whenever the Gospel is recited, they bring forth lights, though it be at noon day; not certainly to drive away the darkness, but to manifest some sign of joy.’† Those attendants who answer and wait upon the Priest, and at High Mass carry the lights, are thus noticed by St. Isidore in his book called ‘Origines,’ which he composed towards the year 595:—‘Those who in the Greek tongue are denominated Acolytes, are, in Latin, called Taper-bearers, from their carrying wax-candles at the reading of the Gospel, or when Sacrifice is to be offered. Then tapers are lighted and borne by them.’‡

## (38)

Amongst the nations of antiquity, an offering of perfumes was regarded as a token of the most pro-

---

\* *Conc. Tolet. C. iv. C. 12.*

† *Hier. Epist. advers. Vigilantium.*

‡ *Isid. Orig. Lib. vii. C. 12.*

found respect and homage. Moses received particular instructions from God to erect an altar of Incense in the Tabernacle. The early Christians imitated the example of the Jews, and used incense at the celebration of their liturgy. The ceremony of burning incense at this part of the Holy Sacrifice, should figure to us, that as a grateful perfume exhales from the glowing thurible, so, a sweet odour is diffused throughout the soul by the Gospel of Jesus Christ, whose bosom glowed with love for man. The spiritual meaning which the Church attached to the burning of incense will be indicated under Note 72. For some observations on the antiquity and general custom throughout the western and oriental churches, of burning perfume at divine service, the reader may consult Ch. xvii. on Incense, Part 2.

(39)

By standing up during the Gospel, we express our readiness to answer the call of the inspired volume; and to obey the precepts which it delivers to us.

(40)

This is the remnant of a very ancient ceremony practised in the Greek\* and Latin Churches. At the General Councils, a copy of the sacred volume

---

\* See the Liturgies which bear the names of St. James, of St. Basil, and of St. John Chrysostom. Precisely the same ceremonies as we observe immediately before and at the chanting of the Gospel, are also prescribed by the Greek Church.

was placed upon an elevated and richly ornamented throne.\* At other times, the holy book was laid upon the altar, as may be perceived in a mosaic which still ornaments the cupola of St. John's church at Ravenna, and was executed about the year 451.† In his Annotations on the Greek liturgies, Goar has the following note on this ceremony of depositing the volume of the Gospels on the middle part of the altar, as on a royal throne;—*Evangelium altaris medio perpetuo accumbens Christum regem throno suo insidentem manifestat: et Sacerdos primo ad altare appulsu, in evangelio Christum veneratur: Diacono humilitatis et statûs sui conscio, thronum illum regium adorare contento.* ‡

(41)

It is thus that the priest signifies that the Gospel he is about to read, is the book of Jesus crucified; and by this action he imitates the piety of the early Christians, who never commenced any work without first making the sign of the Cross. See Ch. ix. on the Cross, Part 2.

(42)

The priest and people here, and at the last Gospel, sign, first, their foreheads with this emblem of

---

\* Cyrill. Alex. *apolog. ad Theod.*

† Ciampina, *Monimenta Vetera*, tom. i. p. 236, Tab. lxx.

‡ Goar *Rituale Græcorum*, p. 122.

Christianity, to manifest, as St. Augustin observes, so far are they from blushing at the Cross, that they do not conceal this instrument of redemption, but carry it upon their brows,\* and with St. Paul, glory in the Cross;† then, their mouths;—‘For with the heart we believe unto justice; but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation;’‡—and, finally, upon their bosoms, by way of admonition that the precepts of Christ should be imprinted in indelible characters upon the heart of every true believer in the Cross. See Ch. ix, on the Cross, in Part 2.

## (43)

This is done both out of reverence for the word of God; and to signify that every thing which emanates from such a hallowed source, is sweet and venerable.

## (44)

This is in accordance with what we read of ‘the great multitude of people who came to hear Jesus, and to be healed of their diseases.’§

## (45)

Such a ceremony testifies our reverence, and expresses our joy in the Gospel, and affection towards Jesus, inspired by his divine words.

---

\* *Usque adeo de cruce non erubesco, ut non in occulto habeam crucem Christi, sed in fronte portem. Aug. in Psalm. cxli.*

† *Gal. C. vi. V. 14.* ‡ *Rom. C. x. V. 10.* § *St. Luke, C. vi. V. 18.*

(46)

This tribute of respect is offered to the priest, because he is the principal sacrificing minister who should 'manifest the odour of his knowledge in every place,' according to the language of St. Paul.\*

(47)

The Creed is said every Sunday during the year, and on all those feasts, the objects of which are in a manner comprehended in it; such as the different festivals instituted in honour of Christ, and of his mother the Blessed Virgin Mary; of the Apostles and Doctors of the Church, by whose arduous labours and writings, the doctrine included in this symbol of Christianity, has been disseminated through the world.

There is a liturgical practice which must be interesting to the reader. The custom of saying the "Our Father" and the "Creed" in silence at Vespers, and at the other portions of the divine service, excepting Mass, in which it is recited aloud, appears to be the remnant of that ancient law, denominated the "Discipline of the Secret," which was most religiously observed by the faithful during the first four ages of the Church.† According to this Apostolical institution, neither the Lord's Prayer, nor the Creed,‡ was permitted to be re-

---

\* 2 Cor. C. ii. V. 14.

† *Disciplina Arcani*, per Emanuelem a Schelstrate.

‡ Vide Benedictum xiv. Lib. ii. C. xix. N. 4, *De Sac. Missæ*.



cited aloud at those parts of the public service, at which it was possible for any unbeliever or uninitiated person to be present.\* It was only after the catechumens had been diligently instructed, and were about to receive baptism, that they were taught these prayers.† Hence may be readily perceived the original reason why the Lord's Prayer should be recited, at Mass, in an elevated tone of voice, and at Vespers, and the Canonical Hours, in perfect silence. The presence of the unbeliever, the Jew, and the Catechumen, was willingly tolerated during the recital of various parts of the public service, and of the commencement of the Liturgy or Mass. But it was one of the official duties of the deacon, to see that all such persons had withdrawn from the assembly, long before that period of the Mass arrived, at which the 'Our Father' was recited. For a short history of the Creeds used in the Church, consult Ch. xiv, Part 2.

(48)

Whenever we address ourselves to the Divinity, we ought to elevate our hearts towards Heaven. The exterior lifting up of the hands, is a figure of the interior elevation of the mind towards God.

(49)

This inclination of the head is to exhibit our

---

\* Writing to his sister Marcellina, St. Ambrose observes—'Post lectiones et tractatum, dimissis Catechumenis, Symbolum aliquibus competentibus in baptisteriis tradebam. *Epist.* xxx.

† *Disciplina Arcani*, p. 101.

profound respect for the ineffable perfections of the Deity.

(50)

At these words, all kneel down to venerate the mystery of the Incarnation; and to adore a God made man, 'who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God; but debased himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of a man, for which cause God also hath exalted him, and hath given him a name which is above all names: that in the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those that are in heaven, on earth, and under the earth.'\*

(51)

It is thus we study to express that our hopes of a joyful resurrection, and of the happiness of eternal life, are founded solely on the merits of Jesus crucified.

(52)

As long as the Discipline of the Secret † was enforced, this was the period at which the Catechumens were dismissed from the Assembly; and then, what was called the Mass of the Faithful, began. Not only were the Catechumens ‡ or per-

---

\* *Philipp. C. ii. V. 6, 7, 9, 10.*

† For a notice of the Discipline of the Secret, see a note at No. 22 in Ch. i. on the Sacrifice of the Mass, Part 2.

‡ Who the Catechumens were, is mentioned in a note to No. 2, in Ch. iii. Part 2.

sons who had not been purified by the regenerating waters of Baptism, excluded from the Sacrifice of the Mass, but also the public penitents, or Christians who had defiled the robe of baptismal innocence by the blacker stains of sin, and were, in consequence, considered, in those times of primitive fervour, unworthy to remain and attend at the Eucharistic Sacrifice.

(53)

The Offertory is an Anthem which the priest recites prior to the Oblation; and which, in some places, is chanted by the choir immediately after the—‘*Dominus vobiscum.*’—It owes its name to a practice which was anciently observed in the Church by the faithful, who, at this part of the Mass, presented at the altar their offerings of bread and wine, to be consecrated at the holy Sacrifice. The choir, in singing this Anthem whilst the priest is offering the bread and wine, imitates the chant of the Jewish sanctuary at the celebration of the Aaronic sacrifice;—‘For when the high-priest stretched forth his hand to make a libation, and offered of the blood of the grape, he poured out at the foot of the altar a divine odour to the most high Prince. Then the sons of Aaron shouted, they sounded with beaten trumpets, and made a great noise, to be heard for a remembrance before God. Then all the people together made haste and fell down to the earth upon their faces, to adore

the Lord their God, and to pray to the Almighty the most High. And the singers lifted up their voices, and in the great house the sound of sweet melody was increased.\*

## (54)

The matter, as it is called, of the Sacrifice, is composed of wheaten bread, and wine of the grape. The Latin Church, in imitation of our divine Redeemer,† employs unleavened bread in the celebration of the blessed Eucharist; a practice which with regard to England, was noticed by our countryman Alcuin, more than a thousand years ago.‡ For some other remarks upon unleavened bread, see Part 2, Ch. II.

## (55)

The Corporal is a square piece of fine linen, so called because it touches the body§ of our Lord. It has been known by such an appellation for more than ten centuries.|| In the Ambrosian rite, which received its present arrangement from St. Ambrose, the Corporal is likened to the linen cloths in which

\* *Ecclesiasticus*, C. L. V. 16, &c.

† *St. Matt.* C. xxvi. V. 17. *St. Mark*, C. xiv. V. 12; and *St. Luke*, C. xxii. V. 7.

‡ *Panis qui in corpus Christi consecratur absque fermento ullius alterius infectionis debet esse mundissimus. Epist. 69, ad Lugdunenses.* Alcuin wrote towards the year 790.

§ In Latin, 'Corpus.'

|| See Amalarius, who wrote towards 820.

the body of our Saviour was shrouded in the sepulchre, and on unfolding it at the offertory, the priest recites what is termed the 'Oratio super sindonem.' The Greeks make use of a similar square piece of linen cloth, which they spread out as we do.\* In their liturgies it is called *εἰλητον*, a word which implies precisely the same meaning as our corporal.† In explaining what is to be understood by the *εἰλητον*, or corporal, Germanus, Patriarch of Constantinople, (A.D. 1222) says;—'It signifies the linen cloth in which was wrapped the body of Christ when it was taken down from the Cross, and deposited in the monument.‡ At a much earlier period, (A.D. 412) an eminent saint of the Greek Church attached the same meaning to the corporal; St. Isidore, who spent the greater part of his life at Pelusium, on the Nile, and was at first the disciple, afterwards the bosom friend and strenuous vindicator of St. John Chrysostom, observes, in one of his epistles, when speaking of the corporal;—'That this piece of linen cloth which is spread under the divine gifts, serves the same

---

\* Goar, *Euchologium Græcorum*, pp. 70, 162. It should not escape the learned reader's notice, that, in the Greek liturgies, the word by which the Priest is designated is *ιερεὺς*, an appellation which the classic writers anciently employed to signify, not merely a minister of religion, but more especially, a sacrificing priest.

† Ibid. p. 70.

‡ Το εἰλητον σημαίνει τὴν σινδόνα ἐν ἣ ἐνεκλήθη τῷ σώματι τοῦ Χριστοῦ ἐκ τοῦ σταυροῦ καταβάν και ἐν μνηματι τεθέν. *Theoria*, p. 163. The Theory is an exposition of the Greek Liturgy.

purpose as the one employed by Joseph of Arimathea. For as that holy man enveloped with a winding-sheet, and deposited in the sepulchre, the body of the Lord, through which the universal race of mortals participated in the resurrection: in the same manner we, who sacrifice bread of proposition on the linen cloth, (or corporal,) without doubt, find the body of Christ.\* This spiritual signification, which has been attributed from all antiquity to the piece of linen called the corporal, as well as the very term itself, by which it is denominated in the Greek and Latin Churches, though an indirect, is a very convincing argument in demonstration of the belief of the real and corporeal presence of Jesus Christ in the blessed Sacrament, which has been professed at every age, and by every nation of the Christian world.

(56)

A circular plate, silver gilt, and sometimes made of gold, so called from the Latin word 'Patena.'

(57)

From the Latin 'Hostia,' or Victim.

---

\* Pura illa sindon, quæ sub divinorum donorum ministerio expansa est, Josephi Arimathensis est ministerium. Ut enim ille Domini corpus sindone involutum sepulturæ mandavit, per quod universum mortalium genus resurrectionem percepit: eodem modo nos propositionis panem in sindone sacrificantes, Christi corpus sine dubitatione reperimus. *Lib. i. Epist. 23.*

(58)

This Prayer is modelled upon the words of the Prophet Daniel. Ch. iii. V. 39, &c.

(59)

Though merely bread, still, by anticipation, it is called an unspotted Host or Victim, as it is about to be converted by Almighty God during the consecration, into the Body of Jesus Christ the one—the only Victim without stain or imperfection.

(60)

The Sacrifice of the Mass is never offered to any Saint, but to God only.

(61)

‘ In many things we all offend.’ \*

(62)

‘ First for his own sins, and then, for the people’s.’ †

(63)

Hence it is evident that prayer is made, at every Mass, for all the faithful departed, as well as for the particular individual whom the priest may especially commemorate afterwards, and in suffrage of whose soul he is offering up the holy sacrifice to God. The Catholic doctrine of prayer for the

---

\* *St. James, C. iii. V. 2.*

† *Heb. C. vii. V. 27.*

souls of the departed, is explained in Ch. vii. on Purgatory.

(64)

A small quantity of water is mixed with the wine, according to a tradition of the Church which teaches us that water was mingled with the wine in the Eucharistic cup, by our divine Redeemer. The Protestant writer, Bingham, acknowledges such to have been the practice of the ancient Church, and enumerates Justin Martyr and St. Cyprian, amongst several other authorities, for this fact.\*

(65)

See some remarks on this ceremony, Part 2, Ch. vi, on the Vestments.

(66)

On this, as on most other occasions, the priest lifts up his eyes in imitation of Christ, who thus invoked the omnipotent power of his heavenly Father.

(67)

This act naturally expresses of itself, a supplication of the Most High.

(68)

The sign of the Cross is so frequently made during the celebration of Mass, and in blessing any

---

\* *Bingham*, Book xv. Ch. 2, Sect. vii.



thing dedicated to the service of Almighty God, to indicate that all our hopes for the blessings prayed for, are founded solely on the merits of Christ's passion, which he endured on the Cross. See Ch. ix, on the Cross.

## (69)

In all the Greek liturgies, the oblations are here incensed; amongst others, see the liturgy of St. Chrysostom, in the *Euchologium Græcorum*, edited by Goar, p. 73.

## (70)

Who standeth, &c. 'There appeared unto him (Zachary) an Angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense. And the Angel said to him: Fear not, Zachary; for thy prayer is heard.\* St. John, in his book of the Apocalypse, mentions that—'Another Angel came and stood before the altar which is before the throne of God.† No wonder that the Church, with these texts of Scripture before her eyes, implores the intercession of the Angels, at this part of her Liturgy. See Ch. v, on the Invocation of Angels.

## (71)

Dirigatur, &c. This prayer, recited by the Priest while incensing the altar, is composed of the second, third, and fourth verses of the 140th Psalm.

---

\* *St. Luke*, C. i. V. 11, 13.      † *Apoc.* C. viii. V. 3.

(72)

These several incensings are, in the first instance, intended as so many tokens of respect for those objects towards which they are employed; but, in the second, there may be derived from them much public instruction. The incense which is burnt in the honour of the Deity, is a symbol of what our prayers should be; and of the oblation which we ought to make of ourselves to Heaven. The incense with which the bread and wine are perfumed, is meant to indicate that the assistants unite their vows and prayers along with those of the Celebrant who offers this oblation. The priest encircles the altar with the fuming thurible, to signify, that as the altar is the throne of Jesus Christ, an odour of sweetness is diffused around it. The ministers of the sanctuary are incensed; first, to admonish them to raise their hearts, and to make their prayers ascend like grateful incense in the sight of God; and secondly, to put them in mind that they are those members of the Church who should continually strive to be able to say with truth;—‘We are the good odour of Christ unto God in them that are saved,’\* and of whom it may be truly observed by men;—‘God always manifesteth the odour of his knowledge by them in every place.’†

(73)

In our Cathedrals and old Churches, all of which

---

\* 2 Cor. C. ii. V. 15.

† *Ibid.* V. 14.

are of Catholic erection, may be still observed, on the Epistle, or left side of the altar, or rather, of the spot where the altars once stood in the chancel, as well as in the side-chapels, a small niche in the wall, that contained a perforated basin of stone, through which was poured the water used at the washing of the priest's fingers. It is indifferently called *Piscina*, and *Lavacrum*.

## (74)

St. Cyril of Jerusalem, who flourished towards the middle of the fourth century, assigns to this ablution a spiritual meaning. This holy catechist observes;—‘You have seen the deacon furnish water to the sacrificing priest, and presbyters standing about the altar, to wash their hands. Did he give it to cleanse away any stain of dirt that soiled their bodies? By no means. For we do not enter into the church with our persons defiled: but that washing of hands is a symbol, and indicates that you ought to be pure from every sin and prevarication.\* The Apostolic Constitutions,† and

---

\* Ἀλλὰ σύμβολόν ἐστι, τοῦ δεῖν ὑμᾶς καθαρεύειν πάντων ἁμαρτημάτων καὶ ἁνομιμάτων, τὸ νιψασθαι. ἐπεὶ γὰρ αἱ χεῖρες σύμβολον πράξεως· νιψασθαι ταύτας, τὸ καθαρὸν δηλονότι καὶ ἁμωμον τῶν πράξεων αἰνιττομεθα.—S. Cyrilli, *Catech.* xxiii. *Mys.* V. p. 325.

† Εἰς δὲ ὑποδιακονος διδοτω ἀπόνιψιν χειρῶν τοῖς ἱερεῦσι σύμβολον καθαρότητος ψυχῶν Θεῷ ανακειμενων.—*Constitutiones Apost.* Lib. viii. C. 11. *Apud Labbeum Concil. General.* tom. i. p. 471.

the author of the Ecclesiastical Hierarchy,\* a work which bears upon it the name of St. Dionysius, the Areopagite, but is now generally considered the production of Synesius an African bishop of the fifth century, affix a similar mystic signification to this ceremony.

## (75)

As this is a hymn of joy, as was before remarked, it is properly omitted in the service for the Dead; and at a time when the pains and sufferings of Christ are commemorated.

## (76)

The Sacrifice of the Mass cannot be offered to any being except the Deity alone; and the Catholic would consider it impious and blasphemous to offer up Mass to any Saint or Martyr, however illustrious for virtue. What St. Augustin asserted 1300 years ago on this same subject, we reiterate at this moment;—‘What priest, at the tombs of the Saints assisting at the altar, ever said: we offer to thee, Peter, or Paul, or Cyprian; but what is offered is offered to God who crowned the Martyrs, at the sepulchres of those whom he crowned.’†

## (77)

By the devotion which we here manifest towards the Saints, we exhibit our reverence towards Jesus

---

\* Ch. liii.      † S. Augustinus, lib. xx. *contra Faust.* Ch. i.

Christ, and his Eternal Father, and the Holy Ghost; for it is purely through the merit of our Redeemer, and by the grace afforded by the Divinity, that the Saints are what they are, the favourites of Heaven, and brethren of Jesus Christ. We do not honour them for any thing they possess of themselves, but we honour in them God's gracious gifts, which wrought their holiness, and formed the sacred spring of all their virtue. We therefore make them one of the mediums through which we convey our homage to the Deity. See Ch. v, on the Invocation of the Saints.

(78)

This prayer calls to our remembrance an expression of Apostolical antiquity. Such was the appellative with which St. Peter addressed the people at Jerusalem;\* and it is a favourite expression of St. Paul.

(79)

So called, because these prayers are recited by the priest, in an under voice, audible to himself, but not heard by the surrounding congregation.

(80)

These words form the conclusion of the SECRET. The priest here elevates his voice at Low Mass, and at High Mass employs a chant in their recita-

---

\* *Acts*, C. ii. V. 29.

tion, in order to fix the attention of the people, and to invite them to unite their prayers with his. The style of music for singing the 'Preface' and the 'Pater Noster,' and for chanting the psalms at Vespers, and at other parts of the divine service, has about it a simple grandeur, and is so exquisitely touching, that, independent of those claims to our respect which it possesses by its venerable antiquity, it has been regarded with enthusiasm, through its own intrinsic merits, by some amongst the most celebrated composers and writers on music.\* It is indiscriminately called Plain Song, and

---

\* Baini, the actual superintendent (A.D. 1833) of the Pope's choir, and the author of a beautiful Miserere, which is sung at Tenebræ, during Holy Week, in the papal chapel, has lately published memoirs of the life and compositions of the justly celebrated Palestrina. Enumerating the several titles to our veneration possessed by what is denominated the Gregorian Song, he observes of it:—*'Le vere antiche melodie del canto gregoriano sono affatto inimitabili. Si possono copiare, ed adattarle, ad altre parole: ma farne delle nuove pregiabili come le antiche, non si sa fare, non v'ha chi l'abbia fatto. Io non dirò, che la maggior parte di esse furono opera de' primitivi cristiani; e che alcune sono dell' antica sinagoga, nate perciò, mi si permetta l'espressione, quando l'arte era viva. Io non dirò che molte sono opere di S. Damaso, di S. Gelasio, e massime di S. Gregorio Magno...Io non dirò, siccome constà per moltissimi monumenti rimastici, che prima di comporre alcun canto ecclesiastico osservavan gli autori la natura, l'indole, il senso delle parole, e la circostanza in cui dovevano essere eseguite, e classificandone il risultato, le ponevano nel modo, o tono corrispondente sia per l'acutezza o gravità, sia per il suo moto e modo di procedere, sia per la collocazione dei semitoni, sia per le fogge particolari di modulazioni sia per gli andamenti proprii delle melodie: differenziavano la maniera di canto per la messa dalla maniera per l'uffizio; altra era la foggia di canto per l'introito, altra per il graduale, altra per il tratto:*

the Gregorian Chant; and though some portions of it—several tones, for instance, of the Psalms—be supposed to have been used in the Jewish Temple, still it receives this latter appellation from the Roman pontiff St. Gregory the Great,\* who reformed

---

altra per l'offertorio, altra per il communio, altra per le antifone, altra per i responsorii; altra per la salmodia dopo l'antifona all'introito, altra per la salmodia nelle ore canoniche: altra per il canto da eseguirsi a voce sola, altra per il canto del coro: e tutto ciò il ricavano dalla limitata estensione di quattro, cinque, al più sei corde, e tavola, ma ben di rado, da sette ed otto intervalli. Io non dirò, il ripeto, niuna in particolare di siffate cose: ma dico sibbene, che da tutti questi pregi insieme uniti ne risulta nell'antico canto gregoriano un non so che di ammirabile ed inimitabile, una finezza di espressione indicibile, un patetico che tocca, una naturalezza fluidissima, sempre fresco, sempre nuovo, sempre verde, sempre bello, mai non appassisce, mai non invecchia: laddove stupide, insignificanti, fastidiose, absone, rugose sentonsi incontanente le melodie moderne de' canti o variati od aggiunti, incominciando dalla metà circa del secolo XIII, fino al dì d'oggi.—*Memorie Storico-critiche della vita e delle opere di Giov. Pierluigi da Palestrina*, tom. ii. pp. 81, 82.

The Abbate Baini pays a compliment to the musical taste of some of our countrymen in the following note:—'Al Sig. Odoardo Grinfield, socio della R. A. di Londra, alli Signori Davis, Morris, e ad altri dotti inglesi, i quali non hanno l'orecchio alterato dalla moda, e ottuso dall'abitudine, intesi dire più d'una volta, che si sentivano commossi dal canto gregoriano, più che dalle rumorose musiche alla maggior parte dei nostri teatri.'—*Ibid.* p. 122.

Rousseau, in his *Dictionnaire de Musique*, article 'Plain Chant,' is equally warm in his approbation of plain chant; for he says of its measures:—'Tels qu'ils nous ont été transmis dans les anciens chants ecclésiastiques, y conservent une beauté de caractère, et une variété d'affections bien sensibles aux connoisseurs non prévenus.'

\* This Pope died in the year 604, and his name should be embalmed in grateful remembrance by every Englishman, as it was he, who, through St. Austin, whom he sent with forty monks from Rome to Britain, converted our Saxon ancestors from Paganism to Christianity.

the too florid and artificial style, which, towards the decline of the sixth century, had imperceptibly insinuated itself into the Church service.\* To introduce a pure and more appropriate taste, the pontiff established a school of singers at Rome,† an institution which is still discernible in the choir of the Pope's chapel, where many of the graces peculiar to the ancient style are still exclusively but scrupulously preserved solely by tradition.‡ To this school of singers, founded by St. Gregory, the whole of the Western Church, but particularly the English portion of it, was indebted for its beautiful and appropriate style of ecclesiastical music. John the Deacon assures us that St. Austin, who, under Almighty God, was the instrument in the hands of St. Gregory, for the conversion of our Saxon forefathers to the Christian faith, introduced this style of singing into Britain immediately from Rome.

---

\* Pellicia de *Christ. Eccl. Politia*, tom. i. p. 254.

† This we gather from the life of that illustrious Pontiff, written by John the Deacon, A.D. 875, who says:—'Deinde in domo domini, more sapientissimi Salomonis, propter musicæ compunctionem dulcedinis, Antiphonarium Centonem Cantorum studiosissimus nimis utiliter compilavit. Scholam quoque Cantorum quæ hactenus iisdem institutionibus in Sancta Romana Ecclesia modulatur, constituit, eique cum nonnullis prædiis duo habitacula, scilicet alterum sub gradibus Basilicæ Beati Petri Apostoli, alterum vero sub Lateranensis Patriarchii domibus fabricavit.'—*In Vita S. Gregorii*, Lib. ii. Cap. 6.

‡ Nella nostra cappella peraltro si conserva tuttora per tradizione non interrotta alcun canto ritmico, e fornito degli antichi ornamenti.—*Memorie Stor.-Crit. della vita, &c. di Palestrina*, tom. ii. p. 90.



According to the same Papal biographer,\* the pontiff Vitalianus, according to our own Venerable Bede, the pontiff Agatho deputed the Roman singer John, together with Theodore, to instruct the British churches in the science of the ecclesiastical music.† The monk Guido of Arezzo, in the eleventh century, conferred a signal benefit on Plain Song, by the invention of a new musical gamut or scale, the notes of which he denominated Ut, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, and La, from each first and sixth syllable in the Sapphic verses which compose the first strophe of the hymn chanted on the feast of St. John Baptist, the 24th of June.

UT queant laxis REsonare fibris,  
 MIra gestorum FAMuli tuorum,  
 SOLve polluti LABii reatum,‡  
 Sancte Joannes.

---

\* Johannes quidem Romanus cantor destinatus fuit cum Theodoro æque cive Romano, sed Eboraci Archiepiscopo, per Gallias in Britannias, qui circumquaque positarum Ecclesiarum filios ad pristinam cantilenæ dulcedinem revocans, tam per se, quam per suos discipulos, multis annis Romanæ doctrinæ regulam conservavit.

† Intereat (Concilio Hedtfeldensi, A. D. 680 celebrato) huic Synodo, pariterque Catholicæ fidei decreta firmabat vir venerabilis Johannes Archicantor Ecclesiæ S. Petri, et Abbas Monasterii Beati Martini, qui nuper venerat a Roma per jussionem Papæ Agathonis, duce reverentissimo Abbate Biscopo, cognomine Benedicto.—*Beda, Hist. Eccl. Lib. cii.*

‡ Happening, during a visit to Rome, to go into a church whilst the monks were chanting this hymn, Guido perceived that the first syllable of the first word of each succeeding hemistich, regularly ascended, either by a whole, or half tone; so that, commencing with the key-note, and rising to the sixth, there was ultimately formed a complete Greek hexachord. A French musician, called Le Maire,

In the public libraries at Rome are preserved several manuscript Missals of a date anterior to the eleventh century, in which the intonations for the 'Gloria in Excelsis,' and the 'Ite, missa est,' and the chants for the 'Preface' and the 'Pater Noster,' are precisely the very same as those employed at High Mass at the present day.

The custom of singing psalms, and employing instrumental music during divine worship, constituted as conspicuous a rite in the service of the Jewish Temple, as it does, at present, in the Christian Church.

'David and the chief officers of the army separated for the ministry the sons of Asaph, and of Heman, and of Idithun, to prophesy with harps, and with psalteries, and with cymbals, according to their number serving in their appointed office—and God gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters. All of these under their father's hand were distributed to sing in the temple of the Lord with cymbals, and psalteries, and harps, for the service of the house of the Lord; and the number of them with their brethren that taught the song of the Lord, all the teachers were two hundred and eighty eight.\* That in the Apostolic times the faithful mingled chanting with their prayers in the public assemblies, is attested by several ex-

---

is reported to have superadded the syllable *Si*, an augmentation which perfectly reproduced the Greek diatonic scale of tetrachords.

\* 1 *Para. C. xxv. V. 1, 6, 7*, Protestant Version, 1 *Chronicles*.

pressions in the epistles of St. Paul. 'Speak' says that Apostle to the Ephesians,\*—'to yourselves in psalms and spiritual songs;' and again, to the Colossians,†—'admonish one another in hymns and spiritual songs.' That such instructions were not unheeded by the early believers, is attested even by heathen writers. Lucian glances at the devotion of the Christians in singing hymns; and Pliny relates,‡ in his famous letter to the Roman Emperor Trajan, that on interrogating certain individuals who had been persuaded to return to Gentilism—'They affirmed of the Christians, that the amount of their fault or their error was, that their custom was to assemble on a certain day before light, and recite reciprocally a hymn to Christ as to God.'§

By writers who have bestowed particular attention on the subject, it is supposed that the Plain Song of the Catholic Church, derived its origin from the synagogue. After the destruction of their temple, and their subsequent dispersion among the nations of the earth, the Jews are presumed to have lost their ancient music; and, therefore, it is in the psalmody and service of our Church, rather than in their synagogues, that must be sought for whatever remains of genuine ancient Hebrew mu-

---

\* *C. v. V. 19.*

† *C. iii. V. 16.*

‡ *Lib. x. Epist. 97.*

§ *Affirmabant autem hanc fuisse summam culpæ suæ, vel erroris, quod essent soliti stato die ante lucem convenire, carmenque Christo, quasi Deo, dicere secum invicem.*

sic.\* The solemn and devotional character of the Ambrosian chant, is particularly mentioned by several ancient writers; but the improvements engrafted on it by St. Gregory the Great, are still more celebrated. The chanting for the psalmody in the time of St. Ambrose, contained no more than four tones: to these were added four more by Pope St. Gregory.

The Psalms are spiritual canticles, and derive their name, *ψαλμοι*, from the Greek verb *ψαλλειν*, 'to touch a musical instrument gently;' because they were always chanted in the Jewish Temple to the sound of the timbrel, the psaltery, or harp. That they are metrical compositions, and have a rythmus, has been noticed by many eminent ancient and modern writers, amongst the former of whom may be enumerated Josephus, Origen, and St. Jerom. No one, however, has illustrated this point more successfully than Dr. Lowth, in his work "*De Sacra Poesi Hebræorum*," whose remarks have been corroborated by his commentator Michælis.†

The invention of the wind-organ,‡ is ascribed to the times of Julian the Apostate; and the introduction of this instrument into the Church-service, is referred, by some authors,§ to the Pontificate of

---

\* Gerbertus *de Musica Eccl.* tom. i. p. 9. † *Prælec.* iii. p. 28.

‡ See page 193, and Note M, of the *Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church*.

§ Bona and Platina.

Pope Vitalian, who occupied the Chair of St. Peter about the year 660. That the organ was known amongst our Saxon ancestors, even at that period, is attested by the poetic enthusiasm with which its thousand voices are noticed by St. Aldhelm, towards the closing of the seventh century.

“ *Maxima millenis auscultans organa flabris*  
*Mulceat auditum ventosis foliis iste,*  
*Quamvis auratis fulgescant cætera capsis.*”

*Bib. Pat. Tom. VIII. p. 3.*

The present mode observed throughout the Church, of chanting the psalms by alternate verses at Vespers, and during other portions of the divine office, claims for itself the highest antiquity.

From the words of the historian Socrates,\* it appears that St. Ignatius Martyr, Bishop of Antioch, and favourite disciple of St. John the Evangelist, was the earliest to introduce into the Church the alternation in singing the hymns and spiritual canticles. According, however, to Theodoretus,† during the reign of the Emperor Constantius, two monks at Antioch, Flavianus and Diodorus, in imitation of what they had already observed amongst the Syrian Christians, distributed the choir into two parts; and regulated that the psalms of David should be chanted by each division alternately. The practice was very soon propagated from Antioch to the neighbouring provinces. But it is to the great St. Ambrose, as we are assured by his

---

\* Lib. vi. Ch. 8.

† *Hist. Eccl. Lib. ii. Ch. 24.*

illustrious disciple St. Augustin, that we are indebted for its introduction into the western or Latin Church.

(81)

Here the priest elevates his hands, to impress upon the people, by such an outward sign, the exhortation which he then delivers for the interior elevation of the heart to God.

(82)

Whilst pronouncing these words, he joins his hands and bows his head, to express as significantly as possible, by this corporal homage, that it is the worship of the spirit, which God insists upon.

(83)

It is called the Preface, from its being the introduction to the prayers of the Canon of the Mass. It is an invitation to elevate our hearts to God, and to offer him our thanksgivings for the stupendous work which he is about to accomplish through the ministry of his priest, by the words of consecration. In this instance, the Church proposes to imitate her founder, Jesus Christ, who returned thanks to his Eternal Father before he called back to life Lazarus, from the tomb in which he had been four days buried; and when he multiplied the loaves,\* and converted bread and wine into his own body and blood.†

---

\* *St. John, C. vi. V. 11.*

† *1 Cor. C. xi. V. 24.*

That the form of prayer called the Preface is very ancient, is certain; that it owes its introduction into the Liturgy to the Apostles, is more than probable. This may be gathered from a variety of sources. St. Cyprian, (A.D. 248) in his book on the Lord's Prayer, particularizes the antecedent Preface by which the priest prepared the minds of the brethren for the more solemn portions of the Mass.\* It is also noticed in the Liturgy of the Mass contained in the Apostolical Constitutions, where we find it thus described;—'Then the high priest standing at the altar with the presbyters, makes a private prayer by himself, having on his white, or bright vestment, and signing himself with the sign of the cross on his forehead.' Having done this, he says; 'The grace of Almighty God, and the love of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the fellowship of the Holy Ghost, be with you all.' And the people answer with one voice; 'And with thy spirit!' Then the high priest says; 'Lift up your hearts;' and they all answer; 'We lift them up to the Lord.' The high priest says again; 'Let us give thanks to the Lord;' and the people answer; 'It is meet and right so to do.' Then the high priest says; 'It is very meet and right above all things, to praise Thee, the true God,' &c.†

---

\* Ideo et Sacerdos, ante Orationem Præfatione præmissa parat fratrum mentes, dicendo: Sursam corda, ut, dum respondet plebs: Habemus ad Dominum: admoneatur, nihil aliud se, quam ad Dominum. C. 13.

† Ευχαμενος οὖν καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς ἅμα τοῖς ἱερεῦσι, καὶ λαμπραν ἐσθῆτα μετενδύς καὶ στας πρὸ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ τὸ τροπαῖον

The frequent allusions which St. Augustin makes to the Preface, will recur to every one who is at all familiar with his writings.

The Greek Church has but one Preface in its Liturgy; but in the Latin or Western Church, different Prefaces have been used on different holydays from the most ancient times. The purport of this variety was, that in each particular Preface, might be designated some amongst the chief characteristics of that especial mystery for which thanks were rendered to God by the Church on that annual festival. In a letter attributed to the Roman Pontiff Pelagius II, who died in the beginning of the year 590, there are enumerated\* by name, nine out of the eleven Prefaces now in use. The tenth, or what is usually denominated the Common Preface, is probably the most ancient one we have, since it may be found in the Sacramentary of Pope St. Gelasius. (A.D. 492.) Concerning the Preface which is recited on the festivals of the Blessed Virgin Mary, and is at-

---

τοῦ σταυροῦ κατα τοῦ μετώπου τῇ χειρὶ ποιησάμενος εἰς πάντας. εἰπάτω· ἡ Χάρις τοῦ παντοκράτορος Θεοῦ καὶ ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ ἡ κοινωνία του ἁγιοῦ πνεύματος ἔστω μετὰ πάντων ὑμῶν· καὶ πάντες συμφώνως λεγέτωσαν· ὅτι καὶ μετὰ τοῦ πνεύματός σου· καὶ ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς· ἄνω τον νοῦν· καὶ πάντες· ἔχομεν πρὸς τον κύριον· καὶ ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς· ευχαριστήσωμεν τῷ κυρίῳ· καὶ πάντες· ἄξιον καὶ δίκαιον· καὶ ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς εἰπάτω, ἄξιον ὡς ἀληθῶς καὶ δίκαιον πρὸ πάντων ἀνυμνεῖν σε τον οὕτως οὐτα Θεον.—*Constitutiones Apost. Lib. viii. Ch. 12. Apud Labbeum Conc. Gen. tom. i. p. 474.*

\* See *Micrologus*, Ch. lx. a work written by an author of the eleventh century.



tributed to Pope Urbanus, (A.D. 1087) it is certain, if it be not the composition of that pontiff, it at least received his approbation.

(84)

Every one will immediately appreciate the expressive propriety of this part of the ceremonial, at the same time that he recognizes in the prayer which accompanies these actions, various passages adopted from the Scriptures. The Prophet Isaias, in the description of his vision, says ;—‘The Seraphim cried one to another and said : Holy, Holy, Holy, the Lord God of Hosts, all the earth is full of his glory ;’\* and St. John heard the same jubilations hymned by the four living creatures ‘who rested not day and night saying, Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty.’†

This seraphic hymn, denominated, in the Latin Church, the *SANCTUS*, is to be found in all the Oriental liturgies,‡ and is distinguished in most of the Greek ones by the appellation of *Epinicion*,§

---

\* *Isaias*, C. vi. V. 3.

† *Apoc.* C. iv. V. 8.

‡ In his observations on the Syriac liturgies, Renaudot remarks, when speaking of the Preface ;—‘Terminatur Oratio (Præfatio) per hymnum Triumphalem, *Sanctus*. Talis est Præfationum omnium Græcarum et Orientalium dispositio absque ullo, præterquam ex verborum copiâ, discrimine, et quod omnes gratiarum actionem continent, et in hymnum triumphalem desinunt, Latinis, eâ in parte, similes sunt.—*Renaudot, Liturgiarum Orientalium Collectio*, tom. ii. p. 78.

§ See the liturgies of SS. Chrysostom and Basil in the *Euchologium Græcorum*, where what we call the *Sanctus*, is denominated the *Επινικιος ὕμνος*, p. 76, 166.

or hymn of triumph. In the liturgy which we have in the Apostolic Constitutions, it is particularly specified that all the congregation shall unite in reciting it at the end of the Preface. That prayer which is there given, is beautiful, and concludes thus:—‘ The innumerable armies of angels adore Thee; the archangels, thrones, dominions, principalities, dignities, powers, hosts, and ages; the cherubim and seraphim also with six wings, with two of which they cover their feet, and with two their faces, and with two fly, saying, with thousand thousands of archangels, and ten thousand times ten thousand angels, all crying out without rest and intermission: *and let all the people say together with them*, Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord of Hosts: heaven and earth are full of thy glory: blessed art Thou for ever. Amen.’\*

St. Cyril of Jerusalem takes particular notice also of this triumphal hymn, in his explanation of the liturgy. The Catechist observes:—‘ We also mention the cherubim which Isaias saw in the spirit, standing about the throne of God, and with two wings covering their faces, and with two their feet, flying with two, and saying, Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God of Hosts.’† The celebrated hymn called

---

\* Καὶ πᾶς ὁ λαὸς ἅμα εἰπάτω· ἅγιος ἅγιος ἅγιος κυριος σαβαώθ, πλήρης ὁ οὐρανὸς καὶ ἡ γῆ τῆς δόξης αὐτοῦ· ἐυλογητος εἰς τοὺς αἰῶνας, ἄμην.—*Constitutionum*, Lib. viii. Ch. 12. *Concil. Gen. Apud Labbeum*, tom. i. p. 479.

† Μνημονεύομεν καὶ τῷ σεραφίμ, ἃ ἐν πνεύματι ἁγίῳ ἐθέασατο Ἡσαΐας, παρεστηκότα κυκλῶ τοῦ θρόνου τοῦ Θεοῦ· καὶ ταῖς μεν δυοῖ

the Trisagion,\* and chanted in the Latin Church on Good Friday only, during the ceremony of kissing the Cross, is inserted in several of the Oriental liturgies, and is frequently recited in their public offices and private devotions, by the Greek and Oriental Christians.† This hymn was first introduced, as a public prayer, at Constantinople in the reign of Theodosius the Younger, during the supplications offered up by the whole city, to avert the horrors of an earthquake.‡

## (85)

The bell is rung as an admonition to the people that the priest is about to enter upon the most awful portion of the Mass, namely, the Canon, or Invocation, which immediately precedes the consecration; and for this reason, they are invited, by this ceremony, to redouble their attention, their reverence, and their fervour, from the moment that the 'Sanctus,' or seraphic hymn commences. Instead of distracting, the ringing of the bell fixes the religious attention of the people; and if we may, without presumption, reason on the will of the all-wise Deity, it would seem that the observance of a similar practice was enjoined in the ser-

---

πέρυξι κατακαλύπτοντα τὸ προσωπον, ταῖς δὲ δυσι τοὺς πόδας, καὶ ταῖς δυσι πετύμενα· καὶ λέγοντα, ΑΓΙΟΣ, ΑΓΙΟΣ, ΑΓΙΟΣ, ΚΥΡΙΟΣ ΣΑΒΑΩΘ.—*Catech. Mys.* V. p. 327.

\* Ἁγιος ὁ Θεός, ἅγιος ἰσχυρὸς, ἅγιος ἀθάνατος, ἐλέησον ἡμᾶς.

† *Renaudot*, tom. i. p. 70.

‡ *S. Joannes Damascenus, Orthod. Fidei*, Lib. iii. Ch. 10.

vice of the Jewish Sanctuary for the like intent; since we read that the Lord thus commanded Moses:—‘Thou shalt make the Tunic of the ephod all of violet....and beneath, at the feet of the same tunic, thou shalt make as it were pomegranates, of violet, and purple, and scarlet twice dyed, with little bells set between: so that there shall be a golden bell and a pomegranate, and again another golden bell and a pomegranate; and Aaron shall be vested with it in the office of his ministry, that the sound may be heard when he goeth in and cometh out of the Sanctuary.’\* The author of the book of Ecclesiasticus also notices, ‘the ephod with many little bells of gold all round about, that as Aaron went in there might be a sound and a noise made, that might be heard in the temple, for a memorial to the children of the people.’†

(86)

Sabaoth is one of those Hebrew words which were left untranslated in the earliest Latin version of the Holy Scriptures, called the *Vetus Itala*, and has been preserved in three places in the translation by St. Jerom. Sabaoth is a plural, and signifies ‘Armies.’ As the Roman Missal has always followed the ancient Italic version, it has consequently preserved the word Sabaoth, instead of adopting the Vulgate translation of it, ‘*exercituum*,’ that is, ‘of armies.’

---

\* *Exod. C. xxviii. V. 31, 33, 34, 35.*    † *Ecccl. C. xlv. V. 10, 11.*

(87)

These words are borrowed from the Gospels of St. Matthew and St. Mark, who inform us that our divine Redeemer triumphantly entered into Jerusalem amid the acclamations of the people, who applied to him the words of the Psalmist,\* and shouted 'Hosanna to the Son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.†

(88)

Hosanna is another of those Hebrew expressions‡ which have been inserted without a translation, in the Liturgies of all the Churches. It is, in fact, two Hebrew words contracted by the Greeks into one; and signifies 'save now,' or, 'save, we pray thee.' It was one of those favourite exclamations of joy in use amongst the Jews at the celebration of the feast of Tabernacles, when they went about with green boughs in their hands.§

(89)

The propriety of such gestures will be recognized, when it is remembered, that at the same time the priest invokes the celestial Father in these words: 'Most merciful Father,' with which the Canon commences.

\* *Psalm* cxvii. V. 26.

† *Matt. C. xxi. V. 9.*

‡ Amen, Alleluia, and Sabaoth, have already been enumerated as such. § *Rubr. Talmud.* apud Lightfoot, *Hor. Hebraic.* p.410.

## (90)

The priest exhibits this sign of reverence and affection towards the altar, under the persuasion, that in a few seconds it is to be made the throne on which will repose the Body and Blood of Jesus, verily and indeed present, but veiled under the appearances of bread and wine. For some remarks on the Real Presence and Transubstantiation, the reader is referred to the third and fourth Chapters on the Holy Sacrifice of the Mass, Ch. 1. Part 2.

## (91)

The priest makes the sign of the Cross over the Host and Chalice as he repeats these words: 'bless these gifts, these present, these unspotted sacrifices,' because we neither demand, nor do we hope to obtain, the benedictions of heaven, except through the merits of Jesus, who paid our ransom on the Cross.

The frequent use of the sign of the Cross during the celebration of the Sacrifice of the Mass, is attested by the most authentic testimonies. The Apostolic Constitutions remark how the priest, standing at the altar, signed himself with the trophy of the Cross.\* St. Chrysostom informs us, that the sign of the Cross was not only in perpetual use amongst Christians every hour, but more

---

\* Ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς στας πρὸ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ το τρόπαιον τοῦ σταυροῦ κατὰ τοῦ μετωποῦ τῇ χειρὶ ποιησαμενός εἰς πάντας εἰπάτω.—*Constit. Apost. Lib. viii. Ch. 12. p. 474.*

especially employed at the holy table, and in the ordination of priests; and that its splendour beamed forth with the body of Christ at the mystic supper.\* With regard to its use in the Latin Church, St. Augustin asserts that it was united with every pious and religious office. ‘What,’ demands the Saint, ‘is the sign of Christ unless the Cross of Christ? which sign, unless it be applied either to the brows of the believers, or to the water out of which they are regenerated, or to the oil by which they are anointed with Chrism, (Confirmation) or to the Sacrifice with which they are nourished—none of these rites is properly performed.’†

## (92)

To this part of the Mass, beginning with ‘Te igitur,’ and finishing with the ‘Pater Noster,’ the whole of which is recited in an inaudible tone of voice by the Celebrant, has been affixed the term Canon; because, as the native meaning of this Greek word imports, this prayer has been laid down as the Rule, or Canon, which is to be rigidly fol-

---

\* Οὗτος ἐν τῇ εἰρᾷ τραπέζῃ, οὗτος ἐν ταῖς τῶν ἱερέων χειροτονιαῖς, οὗτος παλιν μετὰ τοῦ σώματος τοῦ Χριστοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ μυστικὸν δείπνον διαλάμπει.—*Chrys.* tom. v. Ch. 9. p. 840.

† Quid est signum Christi nisi crux Christi? Quod signum nisi adhibeatur sive frontibus credentium, sive ipsi aquæ ex qua regenerantur, sive oleo quo Chrismate ununtur, sive sacrificio quo aluntur, nihil horum rite perficitur.—*St. Aug. Hom. cxviii. in Joan.*

lowed by the priest who offers up the Holy Sacrifice. The minutest variation from it can never be tolerated.

(93)

These gifts and these presents are by anticipation called unspotted sacrifices, because they are shortly to become the Body and Blood of Christ, the Lamb of God, the only victim without stain or spot.

(94)

St. Paul says of the Church, that ‘ Christ loved it, and delivered himself up for it, that he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that it should be holy, and without blemish.’\* As the God of Truth cannot violate his promises, the Church has ever been, is, and will be, holy.

(95)

In praying for the Unity of the Church, it is but just that we should, in the first place, remember its visible head and centre upon earth, the Pope or Bishop of Rome; since, as long ago as the year 177, St. Irenæus, in noticing the successors of these Bishops who had been appointed by the Apostles, says:—‘ As it would be tedious to enumerate the whole list of successions, I shall confine myself to that of Rome; the greatest, and most ancient, and

---

\* *Ephes. C. v. V. 25, &c.*



most illustrious Church, founded by the glorious Apostles Peter and Paul; receiving from them her doctrine, which was announced to all men, and which, through the succession of her Bishops, is come down to us.....For, to this Church, on account of its superior Headship,\* every other must have recourse; that is, the faithful of all countries: in which Church has been preserved the doctrine delivered by the Apostles.† One of the bonds which connect us with the Chair of Peter, the centre of Unity,—is prayer for its actual occupant.

(96)

Not only do Catholics honour the King,‡ because, as St. Paul observes, ‘ he is God’s minister to thee for good; but if thou do that which is evil, fear: for he beareth not the sword in vain,’§ but however widely they may differ from him in religious belief, and though he even be a persecutor of the Church, they nevertheless pray for him. In this they not only obey the voice of the Apostle, who desires that supplications, prayers, and intercessions be made for kings;|| but they imitate the faithful of the Old Testament, since we learn that the Jews who were captives in Babylon, accompanied the collection of money which they sent to Jerusalem to Joakim the priest, for the service of

\* Propter potioem principalitatem.

† *Adv. Her. Lib. iii. Ch. 3.*

‡ *1 Peter, C. ii. V. 17.*

§ *Rom. C. xiii. V. 4.*

|| *1 Tim. C. ii. V. 1, 2.*

the altar, with this particular request;—‘Pray ye for the life of Nabuchadonosor, the king of Babylon, and for the life of Balthassar his son, that their days may be upon the earth as the days of heaven.’\* Moreover, they follow the example of the primitive Christians, who, as Tertullian informs us in his first Apology,† prayed for the Emperors though they were Pagans; and, as we gather from the letters of St. Dionysius of Alexandria, continued to offer up fervent prayers for the health of the Emperor Gallus, notwithstanding he was persecuting them.‡

(97)

The Apostles’ Creed teaches us to believe in the Communion of Saints.

(98)

The Lord announced to King Ezechias, by the mouth of the prophet Isaias, that he would protect and save Jerusalem against the Assyrians for his own sake, and for David his servant’s sake.§ The Israelites frequently entreated the Almighty to hear their prayers, for the sake of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The Church, in like manner, refers to the memory of the Blessed Virgin Mary, ‘the mother of our Lord,’ and of the other Saints, of the

---

\* *Baruch*, C. i. V. 7, &c.

† *C.* xxx.

‡ *Euseb. Hist., Eccl. Lib.* vii. Ch. 1.

§ *4 Kings.* Protest. Version, 2 *Kings*, C. xix. V. 34.

new Law, to render God more propitious to her supplications for their sakes. See Ch. v, on the Invocation of Saints, Part 2.

In the very ancient liturgy, called of St. James, and which was used in the church of Jerusalem, we find the following commemoration of the Saints:—*Bowing down, the priest says*; O Lord, do thou vouchsafe to make us worthy to celebrate the memory of the holy Fathers and Patriarchs; of the prophets and Apostles, of John the precursor and Baptist, of Stephen the first of deacons and first of martyrs, and of the holy Mother of God and ever Virgin, Blessed Mary, and of all the Saints. *Raising his voice*:—Wherefore we celebrate their memory, that whilst they are standing before the throne, they may be mindful of our poverty and weakness; and may, together with us, offer to Thee this tremendous and unbloody sacrifice, for the protection of the living, for the consolation of the weak and unworthy, such as we are, &c.\*

St. Cyril, A.D. 348, in his instructions on this very liturgy, observes:—We make a commemoration of all those who have fallen asleep before us, first of the patriarchs, prophets, Apostles, and martyrs,—that God, by their prayers and intercession, may receive our supplications. Then we pray for the dead, &c.†

---

\* *Renaudot*, tom. ii. p. 36.

† Ἐξτα μνημονεύομεν καὶ τῷ προκεκοιμημένων, πρῶτον πατριαρ-

(99)

To the twelve Apostles, are united twelve from amongst the most illustrious martyrs who watered the foundation of the Church with their blood. Linus, Cletus, and Clement, were fellow-labourers with St. Peter, in the preaching of the Gospel at Rome; and all three severally became his successors in the Pontifical Chair. Xystus and Cornelius, were two other Popes; the first was martyred in the reign of Trajan, the latter in the year 252. Cyprian was the celebrated martyr, and Bishop of Carthage. Laurence was Deacon to Pope Xixtus II. Chrysogonus was an illustrious Roman, martyred at Aquileia, under Dioclesian. John and Paul were brothers, who, rather than worship marble gods, and idols, underwent a cruel death, by order of Julian the Apostate. Cosmas and Damian were physicians, who, for the love of God and of their neighbour, exercised their profession gratis.

(100)

It was a very common ceremony in the Old Law, for the priest to hold his hands over the victim which was about to be offered up as a sacrifice.\*

---

χῶν, προφητῶν, ἀποστόλων, μαρτυρῶν· ὅπως ὁ Θεὸς ταῖς ἐνχαῖς αὐτῶν καὶ πρεσβείας προσδεξήται ἡμῶν τὴν δεήσιν.—S. Cyrillus, *Catech. Myst.* V. ix. p. 328.

\* *Exod.* C. xxix. V. 10. and *Levit.* C. i. V. 4.

(101)

The adoration of the Eucharist is attested by all antiquity. St. Cyril of Jerusalem, a father of the Greek Church, thus addresses the recently baptized, who were about to make their first Communion:—‘ After having thus communicated of the Body of Christ, approach to the Chalice of the Blood, not stretching out your hands, but bowing down in the attitude of homage and *adoration*, and saying Amen.’\* St. Ambrose, who died in the year 397, says:—‘ The very flesh of Jesus Christ, which, to this day, we adore in our sacred mysteries.’† St. Augustin remarks that—‘ This flesh Christ took from the flesh of Mary; and because he here walked in this flesh, even this same flesh he gave to us to eat, for our salvation; but no one eateth this flesh without having first *adored* it, and not only do we not sin by adoring, but *we even sin by not adoring it.*’‡

The elevation and adoration of the body and

\* Εἶτα μετα το κοινωνῆσαι σε τοῦ σώματος Χριστοῦ, προσερχον καὶ τῷ ποτηρίῳ τοῦ αἵματος· μὴ ἀνατείνων τὰς χεῖρας, ἀλλὰ κυπτων, καὶ τροπῇ προσκυνήσεως καὶ σεβασματος λεγων το, Ἀμην. — *Catech. Myst.* V. p. 332.

† Caro Christi, quam hodie quoque in Mysteriis adoramus, et quam Apostoli in Domino Jesu adorarunt.—*De Sp. Sanct.* L.iii.C.12.

‡ De carne Mariæ carnem accepit, et quia in ipsâ carne hic ambulavit, et ipsam carnem nobis manducandam ad salutem dedit. Nemo autem carnem illam manducat, nisi prius adoraverit; et non solum non peccemus adorando, sed eûam peccemus non adorando.—*Psalms* xcvi. V. 9.

blood of Jesus Christ in the holy sacrifice of the Mass, are to be found in all the Oriental liturgies, whether Greek, Syriac, Egyptian, or Ethiopic;\* and are distinctly pointed out in the liturgies of St. James, St. Chrysostom, and St. Basil.†

The following is the rubric for the elevation, extracted from the liturgy of St. Chrysostom. *Here the priest and deacon adore, both saying in secret, God be merciful to me a sinner. And all the people likewise adore. But when the deacon shall observe the priest extending his hands and covering the holy bread, that he may perform the sacred elevation, he exclaims,—Let us attend:—and the priest says,—Holy things for holy people:—and the choir answers,—One is holy, one Lord Jesus Christ in the glory of the Father. Amen.‡ The elevation and adoration of the sacred blood in the chalice is afterwards made, if possible, in a more impressive manner; when, at the bidding of the priest, the deacon approaches to receive the holy communion,§ announcing aloud—I come to*

---

\* Renaudot, tom. ii. p. 214. † *Ib.* tom. i. pp. 23, 82, 122, 265, 343.

‡ Εἴτα προσκυνεῖ ὁ ἱερεὺς καὶ ὁ διακονος ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶ τοῦ ᾠδῶν λεγοντες μυστικῶς τρις. Ὁ Θεος ἰλάσθητί μοι τῇ ἁμαρτωλῇ. Καὶ ὁ λαὸς ὁμοίως πάντες μετὰ εὐλαβείας προσκυνοῦσιν, ὅταν δὲ ἴδῃ ὁ διακονος τὸν ἱερεὺς ἐκτεινοντα τὰς χεῖρας καὶ ἀπωμενον τοῦ ἁγίου αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸ ποῆσαι τὴν ἁγίαν ὑψώσιν, Ἐκφωνεῖ προσχωμεν. Καὶ ὁ ἱερεὺς. Τα ἅγια τοῖς ἁγίοις. Ὁ χορὸς. Εἰς ἅγιος, εἰς κυριὸς Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς εἰς δοξάν Θεοῦ πατρὸς.—Goar, *Euchologium Graecorum*, p. 81.

§ In the Greek liturgy, the elevation does not take place until just before the Communion. In the Latin liturgy, the elevation did not take place anciently until the Pater Noster. See notes 102 & 111.

the immortal king, I believe, O Lord, I confess.\* During the earlier ages of the Church, the elevation was rendered particularly solemn in the east. The screen which separates the sanctuary from the body of the church, in those countries which follow the Greek rite, is perforated with three door-ways, which are now partially, but in ancient times, were quite covered over with curtains.† Once it was the custom to let fall these curtains at the commencement of the Canon, and they were only withdrawn at the elevation, that the sacred mysteries might receive the adoration of the people. To this ceremony St. Chrysostom refers in a stream of beautiful language, worthy of the golden-mouthed fountain of eloquence from which it flowed. Discoursing on the blessed Sacrament of the altar, the Saint exclaims:—‘ Here when sacrifice is offered up; when Christ is immolated, the victim of the Lord; as soon as you shall hear those words,—Let us all pray in common;’ as soon as

---

\* *Ibid.* p. 83, 84. On this point we possess the admission of a candid French Protestant who says:—‘ Des docteurs si illustres ont avancé que les Grecs ne reçoivent point la transsubstantiation, que je me fais une peine de vous dire le contraire. Cependant il le faut bien, puisque c’est la vérité: apparemment qu’ils ont eu de mauvais mémoires, ou qu’on leur a voulu parler de quelque secte qui n’est pas connue en ces quartiers ici: car je vous puis assurer que les Grecs de Constantinople et de Smyrne la croient purement et simplement comme les Latins; et s’ils ne se mettent point à genoux hors de l’élévation de l’Hostie, c’est que leur façon d’adorer n’est pas telle.’—*Voyage du Sieur Dumont*, tom. iv. Lett. i. p. 16.

† This practice will be noticed in a subsequent dissertation on the ancient altars, Ch. xvi.

you shall perceive that the veils that overhang the gates are drawn aside, then figure to yourselves that the heavens have descended from on high, and that the angels have come down.\* And in another homily:—‘Before that awful moment, be moved; nay tremble to the very soul, before you behold, as the veils are drawn aside, the angelic choir advancing—yes, mount spontaneously to heaven itself.†

(102)

Up to the eleventh century, the elevation did not take place until about the end of the Canon. Towards the year 1047, Berengarius began to broach his errors concerning the Holy Eucharist. Not only were the heterodox opinions of this innovator immediately anathematized by several councils; but the whole Latin Church unanimously adopted a ceremonial at the celebration of Mass—the elevation—which should at the same time furnish a most significant condemnation of the new doctrine of Berengarius, and be an unequivocal and practical profession of faith concerning the real presence of Christ in the Sacrament, in which

---

\* Ενταυθα εκφερομενης της θυσίας, καὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ τεθυμενου, καὶ του προβατου του δεσποτικου, όταν ακουσης, Δειθῶμεν πάντες κοινῇ, όταν ἴδης ἀνελκόμενα τα ἀμφιδυρα, τότε νόμισον διαστελλέσθαι τὸν ουρανον ἀνωθεν, καὶ κατέναι τους ἀγγέλους.—*Homil. III. in Epist. ad Ephesios.*

† *Homil. I. in Epist. ad Corinth.*



bread and wine are transubstantiated into the Body and Blood of Jesus, uplifted by the priest, and adored by the people at the elevation. In the Greek and Eastern Churches, the ceremony of the elevation, which has always been observed by them, does not take place until just before the Communion.\*

(103)

The bell is rung to fix the attention of the people, and to give them warning to prostrate soul and body, and to adore their crucified Redeemer concealed under the appearances of bread and wine. Such of our Protestant fellow countrymen who may choose to be present at the celebration of the Sacrifice of the Mass, should kneel down without waiting for any intimation at this, and other solemn periods of our service. If they neglect to do so, they prove themselves not only unacquainted with public decorum, but guilty of inconsistency. Though they may refuse their assent to the Catholic doctrine comprehended in the Eucharist, still they must recognize in the sacrament, as celebrated and administered according to the Catholic ritual, as many titles to demand their homage, as their own Lord's supper, at which they kneel. The Catholic, on the other hand, should study to manifest, by his outward demeanour, the inward belief, and

---

\* Goar, *Euchologium Graecorum*, p. 81.

consequent reverence which he cherishes towards the Eucharistic mysteries. He should be bent on both knees in silent adoration. He should avoid either suspending his own, or interrupting the devotion of his neighbour by coughing, &c. &c. which sometimes violates that silence which ought profoundly to reign at the moment of the elevation. To excite his own devotion, let him occupy his mind with the real though shrouded presence of Jesus, now throned upon the altar around which Cherubim and Seraphim are kneeling lowly down in worship: let him call to his remembrance the description just now given\* by St. John Chrysostom, who, in such splendid strains of eloquence, sketches what takes place, at this tremendous time, within the sanctuary. There is something indescribably impressive in the suspension of the choir, as well as of the music, and in the silent pause which is observed in some places at the consecration and elevation; during which not one sound is audible, save only the tinkling of the bell,—and each one is prostrate in the most profound adoration.

There is a sublimity of worship produced by such a silence, that cannot be too earnestly recommended where music accompanies the celebration of the Mass.

(104)

Not the Hell of the damned, but that Hell into which, as we are taught to believe by the Apostles,

---

\* See Note 101.

Jesus Christ descended 'after he was dead and buried;'—a place between Heaven and the Hell of the damned, denominated by Catholics the *Limbus Patrum*. To this middle state St. Peter refers, when he says that 'Christ being put to death indeed in the flesh, but enlivened in the spirit. In which also coming, he preached to those spirits that were in prison; which were sometime incredulous.\*' For some further remarks upon a middle state, see Ch. VII. Part 2.

(105)

The Church avails herself of every occasion to impress upon the minds of the priest and of the people this truth, that the sacrifice of the altar is the very same with that which was offered on the Cross. She is solicitous that the priest, especially after the consecration, should behold, with an eye of faith, Jesus Christ immolated on the Cross, as St. Paul observes to the Galatians, 'before whose eyes Jesus Christ hath been set forth, crucified among you.†'

To produce this effect, she has ordained in her liturgy that all these words which designate the Body or the Blood of Jesus Christ, should be accompanied by the sign of the Cross, to signify that the consecrated Host and contents of the Chalice are the same Body which was crucified, and the same Blood which was shed upon the Cross.

---

\* 1 *Peter*, C. iii. V. 18, &c.

† 1 *Gal.* C. iii. V. 1.

For some remarks on the Real Presence and Transubstantiation, see Part 2, Ch. I, Sect. 3 and 4.

(106)

In all the ancient liturgies, of the eastern as well as the western Church, prayer is invariably made for the souls of the faithful departed.\* For some illustrations of this article of faith, the curious reader is referred to Ch. vii. in the second part of this work.

(107)

According to the language of Christian antiquity, to die in peace, is to die with the sign of ecclesiastical communion, in a union and society with Jesus Christ and his Church.

(108)

After having prayed for certain persons in particular, the Church instructs us to pray for the souls of all the faithful departed in general, in order, as St. Augustin observes,—‘That such religious duty, whenever it becomes neglected by parents, children, relations, or friends, may be supplied by our pious and common mother the Church.’† In the

---

\* Extracts from these several liturgies are given in Ch. xv. on the Diptychs.

† Supplicationes pro omnibus in Christianâ et Catholicâ societate defunctis etiam tacitis nominibus eorum, sub generali commemoratione suscipit Ecclesia, ut quibus ad ista desunt parentes aut filii, aut quicumque cognati vel amici, ab unâ eis exhibeantur piâ matre communi.—*August. tract. de curâ pro mortuis*, Cap. iv.

primitive Church, the names of those for whom the priest was to pray more especially, were enrolled within ivory tablets, called diptychs, for some notices on which, see Ch.xv. Part 2.

Prayer for the dead is made, at this part of the holy sacrifice, in the liturgy which we have in the Apostolic Constitutions;\* and St. Cyril of Jerusalem, in his catechetical instructions to the recently baptized concerning the Mass of the faithful, at which they were about to be, for the first time, present, tells them that—‘first, commemoration of the Saints is made, that God, by their prayers and intercession, may receive our supplications; and that then, we pray for our holy fathers and bishops, and all who are fallen asleep before us, believing it to be a considerable advantage to their souls to be prayed for, whilst the holy and tremendous sacrifice lies upon the altar.’†

(109)

In imitation of the publican who is described by our Redeemer in the Gospel, as striking his breast, and saying,—‘O God, be merciful to me a sinner.’‡

---

\* *Lib. viii. C. 12.*

† *Εἶτα καὶ ὑπὲρ μνημονεύομεν καὶ τῶν προκεκοιμημένων ἁγίων πατέρων, καὶ ἐπισκόπων, καὶ πάντων ἀπλῶς τῶν ἐν ἡμῖν προκεκοιμημένων· μεγίστην ὄνησιν πιστευόντες ἔσεσθαι ταῖς ψυχαῖς, ὑπὲρ ὧν ἡ δεξις ἀναφέρεται, τῆς ἁγίας καὶ φρικωδεστάτης προκειμένης θυσίας.*  
—S. Cyrillus, *Catech. Mystag. V.* No. ix. p. 328.

‡ *St. Luke, C. xviii. V. 13.*

## (110)

Mention is here made of several martyrs and saints belonging to the several orders and states of holy personages in the Church. St. John Baptist is of the order of Prophets ; St. Stephen of the order of Deacons ; St. Matthias of the order of Apostles ; St. Ignatius, who suffered martyrdom at Rome, in the year 107, is of the order of Bishops ; St. Alexander, who was put to death for the faith, at Rome, in the year 117, is of the rank of Popes ; St. Marcellinus, who was martyred in the reign of Dioclesian, is of the order of Priests ; St. Peter, the fellow martyr of St. Marcellinus, of the order of Clerks ; SS. Perpetua and Felicitas are of the state of married persons ; SS. Agathy and Lucy, St. Agnes, St. Cecily, and St. Anastasia, are of the state of Virgins.

## (111)

Here the priest holds the sacred Host in his right hand over the Chalice, which he takes in his left, and then elevates a little both the Host and the Chalice. Up to the eleventh century, the Body and Blood of Christ were here held up to receive the adoration of the people. But, as has been already observed, about the year 1047, a more solemn elevation was adopted by the Church, to furnish a public and daily profession of its ancient faith concerning the Real Presence, in contradiction to the impious novelties of Berengarius. This, in consequence, is denominated the minor or second

elevation, in contradistinction to the first, which precedes it, and takes place immediately after the consecration.

## (112)

In the Latin Church, the 'Our Father' is recited at Low, and sung at High Mass; in the Greek Church, it is repeated or chanted by all the people.

In many parts of Asia, the sacrifice of the Mass is offered up in ancient Syriac; in Africa, especially in Egypt, in ancient Coptic, once the common, but for these many centuries past, dead languages in these respective countries. Though the Asiatic and African Christians of the present day talk a dialect quite different from the ancient Syriac and Coptic, with which they are utterly unacquainted, still, in joining in the public offices and liturgy of the Church, they recite the 'Our Father,' &c. in the obsolete language, notwithstanding they possess vernacular translations of this prayer into modern Arabic, which they use in their private devotions.\*

## (113)

The priest invokes the suffrage first of the blessed Virgin Mary, whom St. Elizabeth, filled with the Holy Ghost, denominated the 'mother of our Lord.'†

That the blessed Virgin is the mother of Jesus Christ, is indubitable: but Jesus Christ is God; consequently, she is properly styled the mother of

---

\* Renaudot, *Liturgiarum Orientalium Collectio*, tom. i. p. 113.

† *St. Luke*, C. i. V. 41, 43.

God, (*Θεοτοκος*) a title which was approved of by a general council held at Ephesus in the year 341.\* St. Peter and St. Paul conjointly founded the Church of Rome by their labours and their preaching; and both of them cemented the foundation with their blood. Rome has ever exhibited especial veneration towards St. Andrew, as he was the brother of St. Peter, the prince of the Apostles.

(114)

At these words the priest makes on himself the sign of the Cross with the paten, which he afterwards kisses as the instrument of peace, and the disk on which is about to be deposited the blessed Eucharist, the peace of Christians. He employs it in making the sign of the Cross, because it was by the Cross that Christ became 'our peace....and hath reconciled us to God in one body by the Cross, killing the enmities in himself, and coming, he preached peace.'†

(115)

The fraction of the Host is one of the principal ceremonies in the Canon of the Mass, and is found in every ancient liturgy, either of the western or eastern Churches. The fraction or breaking of bread by Jesus Christ at the last supper, is parti-

---

\* This is the third of the four General Councils recognized by the English Protestant Church.

† *Ephes. C. ii. V. 14, &c.*



cularly mentioned by three of the Evangelists, and by St. Paul, who tells us that Jesus took bread, and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, 'take ye and eat, this is my body.' That this rite was ordained by Christ, and was something more than ordinary breaking of bread, may be inferred from the stress which the Apostle of the Gentiles lays upon it, when he thus interrogates the Corinthians;—'The bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord?' ; and from the circumstance, that not only was Christ recognized by the two disciples at Emmaus in the breaking of bread,\* but in the book of the Acts, the breaking of bread is synonymous with consecrating the blessed Eucharist; for St. Luke informs us that it was on the first day of the week they assembled to break bread.†

(116)

This ceremony is interesting from its connexion with a practice once followed by the Church. It was anciently a custom for the Sovereign Pontiff at Rome, and for the Bishops of the other cities in Italy, to send by acolytes,‡ deputed for that purpose, a small portion of the holy Eucharist which they had consecrated, to the various titular

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xxiv. V. 35.*

† *Acts, C. xx. V. 7.*

‡ St. Tharsicius was one of those acolytes, who, rather than betray to the Pagans who had seized him, what he was carrying, suffered himself to be beaten to death with clubs. Vide *Martyrologium Romanum*, Die August. 15.

churches of the city.\* The priest who was celebrating the holy sacrifice, used to put this particle into the Chalice, at the same time that he recited the prayer, 'The peace of our Lord,' &c.

That the Roman Pontiffs, on the other hand, were accustomed to receive the holy Eucharist which was sent to them by bishops of distant churches, is attested in a letter concerning the churches of Asia, addressed by St. Irenæus to Pope Victor. The object of such a practice was to signify that communion of the same sacrifice and sacrament by which the head and members of the Church were spiritually united; so that, in the words of St. Paul, they might address each other; 'for we being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread.'†

(117)

Every time that these words are repeated, all strike their breasts to testify a sorrow for their sins, of which, by this ceremony, they implore forgiveness from a merciful Redeemer.

(118)

St. Peter‡ and St. Paul§ instruct the faithful to

\* There is an enactment to this effect by Pope Melchiades, who died in the year 313. See *Anastasius*, vol. ii. p. 271.

† 1 *Cor. C. x. V. 17.*

‡ 1 *Peter. C. v. V. 14.*

§ *Rom. C. xvi. V. 16.*—1 *Cor. C. xvi. V. 20.*—2 *Cor. C. xiii. V.*  
—1 *Thess. C. v. V. 26.*

whom they directed their epistles, to 'salute one another with a holy kiss.' This ceremony was, in consequence, especially observed at the celebration of the Holy Eucharist, as we gather from all the public liturgies, and most ancient Christian writers. Justin Martyr,\* Tertullian,† St. Cyril of Jerusalem,‡ as well as several others, particularly notice it; and in the Apostolical Constitutions, is contained this minute description;—'After the priest has given the salutation of peace, and the people have returned their answer, a deacon goes on to proclaim solemnly that they should salute one another with a holy kiss; and so the clergy salute the bishop, and lay-men their fellow lay-men.'§ Hence arose the custom which is still kept up in many places upon the continent, and in several country congregations in England, of men and women occupying separate sides of the church.

## (119)

Here, those who have complied with the instruction of the Apostle, and have proved themselves,|| and who are not conscious to themselves of sin, or have obtained pardon of it by the sacrament of pe-

---

\* *Apol.* ii. p. 97.

† *Ad Uxorem*, Lib. ii. C. 4.

‡ *Catech. Myst.* V. No. 2.

§ *Constitut.* Lib. viii.

|| But let a man prove himself....For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment (in the Protestant translation, damnation) to himself, not discerning the body of the Lord. 1 *Cor.* C. xi. V. 28, 29.

nance, accompanied with a firm purpose of amendment,\* advance towards the rails to receive the holy communion. As the post-communion is the prayer of thanksgiving after communion, and is common both to priest and people, it is greatly to be desired that such as receive the blessed Sacrament, would present themselves at the proper time, which is at the *Domine, non sum dignus*. It is to invite communicants to approach the altar, that the acolyte or minister rings the bell at this part of the Mass. The communion is given in the following manner. The acolyte, kneeling on the epistle side of the altar, repeats the *Confiteor*, (see page 7) as a public declaration of sorrow for sin on the part of those who are about to receive the blessed Eucharist. The priest then turns round to the people, and says:—‘*May Almighty God be merciful unto you, and forgiving you your sins, bring you to life everlasting.*’ R. ‘*Amen.*’ ‘*May the Almighty and merciful Lord grant you pardon, † absolution, and remission of your sins.*’ R. ‘*Amen.*’ Having adored on his knees, he then takes the sacred Host into his hands, and turning about, says:—‘*Behold the Lamb of God, behold him who taketh away the sins of the world. Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst enter under my roof, say but only the word and my soul shall be healed.*’ This last sentence he repeats thrice,

---

\* Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them: and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained. *St. John, C. xx. V. 23.*

which is as oftentimes recited along with the priest by the communicants, who, at each repetition, strike their breasts, in attestation of their sorrow for having ever sinned, and of their unworthiness to receive the Body and Blood of their Redeemer. The priest then descends to the rails, bearing within a kind of vase, called the Ciborium, or upon the Paten, the blessed Eucharist. Holding the communion-cloth spread over their hands, with their eyes reverently closed, the head modestly raised, the mouth conveniently opened, and the tip of the tongue resting upon the lip, the communicants successively receive the body of Christ, which is administered to them in the following manner:—the priest, holding one of the consecrated particles in his right hand, makes with it the sign of the Cross over the communicant, to call to his remembrance that it is the very body of Jesus Christ which hung upon the Cross; and afterwards imparts it to him with these words: †  
*‘The body of our Lord Jesus Christ preserve thy soul unto life eternal. Amen.’* The communicants, on receiving the sacrament, bend down and adore in silent but most fervent worship. They then retire from the rails, not with a hasty, but decorous step, with downcast eyes, and a becoming gravity. Concerning communion under one kind, and the use of unleavened bread, see Part 2, Ch. II. Sect. ii.

(120)

To express in a lively manner that the sacred

Body which he is about to take, is the very same which was sacrificed upon the Cross.

## (121)

In the Greek Church each Eucharistic particle is called *μαργαριτης*, or 'a pearl,' to signify that the smallest part of the blessed sacrament is a jewel of the greatest price. In the rubric of St. John Chrysostom's liturgy, 'the deacon, or in his absence, the priest, is directed to wipe the sacred Chalice thrice, and to take most particular care lest the particle called the 'pearl' remain.\* St. Cyril of Jerusalem, who lived about the year 351, in his instructions for receiving the holy Eucharist, thus exhorts the recently initiated:—'Receive the holy Body with such care, that you do not suffer any part of it to be unhappily lost; for should you let any of it fall, regard it as much as the loss of one of your own members. Let not one single crumb of that which is much more precious than gold or gems, escape you.† Such anxious solicitude would not have been exhibited by the author of the liturgy, nor would the sainted catechist have insisted on such scrupulous attention about an atom of common bread. Both, consequently, believed each particle of the blessed Eucharist. to be the real body of Christ Jesus.

---

\* Goar, *Euchologium Graecorum*, p. 86.

† Προσεχων μη παραπολέσης τι εκ τούτου αυτού. ὅπερ γὰρ εἰν ἀπολεσης, τούτῳ ὡς ἀπο ὀκειον δηλονοτι ἐζημώθης μελους.—S. Cyril. *Catech. Mystag. V.* No. 21, p. 332.

## (122)

The priest who celebrates Mass, receives under both kinds, because he must consume the sacrifice offered up under two species. At the last supper, when Christ commissioned his Apostles to do as he had done, he said to them:—‘ Drink ye all of this.’ No one, however, was present but the Apostles, all of whom were then ordained sacrificing priests. The priest or bishop, nay, even the Pope himself, who partakes of the blessed Eucharist without saying Mass, receives the communion like any laymen, under one kind only. For some other remarks, see Ch. II. Sect. ii. of Part 2.

## (123)

The anthem called the communion, varies with each Sunday and festival; and is generally, though not always, a versicle extracted from the Psalms. It is thus denominated, because it used to be anciently chanted by the choir during the time the priest distributed the blessed Eucharist to the people.

In the Apostolic Constitutions,\* it is prescribed that the thirty-third psalm† should be employed for this purpose. In his exposition of the liturgy used at his time in the ancient Church of Jerusalem, St. Cyril thus notices the chanting of the communion:—‘ After this, you hear one singing

---

\* *Lib. VIII. C. 13, Apud Labbeum, Concil. Gen. tom. i. p. 484.*

† In the Protestant Bible, the thirty-fourth.

with a divine melody, inviting you to a communion of the holy mysteries, and saying, ‘O taste, and see that the Lord is gracious.’\*

## (124)

This prayer received its name from being recited just after the communion; and because it is an act of thanksgiving to God for the ineffable favour of having participated in the sacred mysteries. The form used in the ancient Church may be seen in the Apostolic Constitutions.†

## (125)

The same ceremony is observed in the Greek liturgy, which directs the deacon to proclaim to the people:—‘Let us proceed in peace.’‡ For some observations on this form of dismissing the people, see Ch. III. Part 2.

## (126)

In the Old Testament we frequently read that the priest, stretching forth his hands to the people, blessed them. *Levit. C. ix. V. 22.*

\* S. Cyrillus, *Catech. Mystag. V.* No. 20, p. 331.

† *Lib. viii. C. 14.* Where it is called ‘The declaration after communion,’ Προσφωνησις μετὰ την μεταληψιν.

‡ *Εν εἰρήνῃ προσελθωμεν.*—Goar, *Euchologium Graecorum*, p. 85. According to the Apostolic Constitutions, the deacon declared to the people that Mass was finished by announcing:—‘Depart in peace’—ἀπολυεσθε ἐν εἰρήνῃ.—*Apud Lab. Con. Gen. tom. i. p. 487.*



(127)

All make a genuflexion at these words, to adore the second person of the blessed Trinity, who was pleased to take flesh for our redemption.

(128)

The Benediction over the people with the blessed Sacrament, is a rite frequently practised. On the Continent, no sooner does the church-bell toll for it, than crowds suspend their occupations, and hasten to prostrate themselves around the altar, before Jesus Christ veiled under the appearance of bread, in the Eucharist. Catholics, in every part of the globe, by this act of public adoration to the blessed Sacrament, profess their belief in the Real Presence and Transubstantiation.\* They would deem it the foulest act of idolatry to worship a piece of bread. Since, however, they are assured by the word of God, that the second person of the blessed Trinity, who became incarnate for us, is really present, though concealed under the appearance of bread; as the Holy Ghost was really present, though concealed under the appearance once of a dove—another time, of a flame of fire; they exhibit divine adoration to him, well knowing that it cannot be idolatry to worship the true and living God, Christ Jesus.

---

\* See C. i. Part 2, on the Liturgy of the Mass.

## (129)

Such is the appellation given to a species of small temple erected on the central part of our altars; and in which, the blessed Eucharist is reserved, not only for the use of the sick, but to be occasionally exposed to the adoration of the people, and to be perpetually present to excite their devotion, and draw the faithful to the house of God.

## (130)

The ostensorium is a species of vessel employed, as its name implies, for showing the blessed Sacrament to the people, to receive their worship. It is composed of a stem, which supports a crystal case, surrounded by rays of glory.

## (131)

For some notice on the use of the veil, and the custom derived from antiquity of never touching the sacred vessels but with covered hands, see Ch. XII. No. 48, on the Vestments; Part 2, on the Liturgy of the Mass.

## (132)

Catholics believe that in the blessed Eucharist are the Body and the Blood, together with the Soul and the Divinity of Jesus Christ. They believe that after the words of consecration, what was bread is then changed, or, as it is called, transubstantiated into the Body of Christ; so that, not the sub-

M

stance, but the appearance only of bread remains. By bending the knee, Catholics, therefore, intend to worship Christ, and not a piece of bread. To bow the knee in divine adoration of a piece of bread, or of any thing else besides the Deity, would be idolatrous and blasphemous.

(133)

The ciborium is a silver chalice-like vase, with a cover, in which the blessed Sacrament is reserved within the Tabernacle.

END OF NOTES ON THE RUBRICS.

**DISSERTATIONS**  
**ON THE**  
**DOCTRINE AND RITUAL**  
**OF THE**  
**HOLY EUCHARISTIC SACRIFICE.**  
  
**PART II.**

**M 2**



# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### SECTION I.

#### ON SACRIFICE IN GENERAL.

1. THE necessity of interior and exterior worship.—2. Sacrifice offered from the beginning of the world.—3. What sacrifice is.—4. The four ends of sacrifice.—5. The legal sacrifices were of no avail when unconnected with the future death of the Redeemer.—6. A new sacrifice was necessary.—7. The sacrifice of the Cross a true sacrifice.—8. All the ancient sacrifices comprehended in it.—9. The unbloody sacrifice of the New Law.
- 

### SECTION II.

#### THE MASS A SACRIFICE.

10. The Mass a true sacrifice.—11. Sacrifice of Melchisedech.—12. The sacrifice of Melchisedech elucidated by the Fathers.—13. Illustrated by an ancient Mosaic at Ravenna.—14. The Paschal Lamb a figure of the sacrifice of the Mass.—15. Accomplishment of the prophecy of Malachias in the sacrifice of the Mass.—16. Christ announces a new sacrifice.—17. The sacrifice of the Mass proved from St. Paul.
- 

### SECTION III.

#### ON THE REAL PRESENCE.

18. The Real Presence.—19. The promise made by Christ that he would give us his flesh and blood to eat and drink.—20. Objection answered.

## CONTENTS.

21. Proof from the Institution. Objections answered.—22. The Real Presence proved from St. Paul.—23. Taught by the rest of the Apostles.—24. All the ancient liturgies attest the Real Presence.
- 

## SECTION IV.

### TRANSUBSTANTIATION.

25. What is meant by the term.—26. Transubstantiation proved from Scripture.—27. Attested by St. Cyril.—28. Illustrated by a practice of the modern Greek Church. Objections answered.—29. From St. Paul.—30. Objection of the term Transubstantiation.—31. Recapitulation.

## PART THE SECOND.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### ON THE HOLY SACRIFICE OF THE MASS.

---

#### SECTION I.

##### ON SACRIFICE IN GENERAL.

##### I.—NECESSITY OF INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR WORSHIP.

RELIGION is that reverential homage of the heart and mind which connects us with God by a perfect submission of ourselves to his sovereign majesty, and the profound prostration of the soul before the throne of his omnipotence, which we exhibit by exterior worship.

It is true that the most grateful offering to the Lord, is that inward adoration—the homage and the breathings of the heart: because God is a spirit, and they that adore him must adore him in spirit and in truth.\*

But man is a compound, not a simple being. He is gifted with a soul which assimilates him to

---

\* *St. John, C. iv. V. 24.*



the angelic spirits ; and he possesses a body, which constitutes a part of the visible creation.

Composed, therefore, of a body and a soul, we must, through the very constitution of our nature, offer up this oblation outwardly, in order to furnish a visible and a public manifestation of the inward emotions of the spirit towards the Divinity ; and hence we must necessarily associate along with interior worship, the rites of some exterior ceremonial, which, in fact, is nothing more than an outward sign, and a sensible declaration, indicative of that interior oblation of ourselves, which each one of us is bound to make to God our Creator, and perpetual preserver.

It is, therefore, impossible that true Religion can in any way subsist without interior and exterior adoration. This will be more evident when we consider that religion, as its very name implies, is, as it were, a bond—a ligature, connecting men with one another, by the profession of a common faith, and a similarity of public worship, in which they outwardly unite to acknowledge their dependence upon God, and to manifest their affection and devotion towards him.

## II.—SACRIFICE OFFERED FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE WORLD.

Nature herself invariably inspired man with the idea that *sacrifice* was the first—the most essential act of exterior religion. From the world's

foundation to the present moment, its existence may be more or less discovered amongst men throughout the earth, however widely separated from each other by almost immeasurable distance, or the interposition of barriers erected by nature, and utterly impossible to be surmounted.

The earliest record of the human race represents Cain as offering to God the fruits of the earth, and Abel as making a similar acknowledgment of homage with the 'firstlings of his flock.'\* After the waters of the deluge had subsided, and Noah, with his family, had issued from the Ark, 'he built an altar unto the Lord; and taking of all cattle, and fowls that were clean, offered up holocausts upon the altar.†

The Almighty condescended to attest the holiness of Job by imparting efficacy to the prayers and the sacrifice which that model of resignation to the will of Heaven presented in behalf of his less righteous neighbours. The oblation of Melchisedech is too well known to demand our observations; while Abraham was so sedulous in sacrificing, that he was even ready to make a victim of his only, and well beloved son Isaac. The dictates inspired by nature, were ratified in the law delivered by God himself to Moses, in which are described with much minuteness the various sacrifices to be offered by the Hebrew people, and in

---

\* *Gen. C. iv. V. 3, 4.*

† *Gen. C. viii. V. 20.*

which it is declared, that to withhold men from sacrificing, or to offer up a sacrifice to any other being whatever, save God alone, were crimes of the most serious enormity:—‘Wherefore the sin of the young men (the sons of Heli) was exceeding great before the Lord,’ says the sacred text,—‘because they withdrew men from the sacrifice of the Lord.’\*

### III.—WHAT SACRIFICE IS.

Exterior sacrifice, according to the proper acceptation of the term, is an offering or oblation of some sensible thing, by a lawfully appointed minister, in order to acknowledge, by the destruction, or, at least, the change effected in the offering, the majesty and sovereign power of God; to proclaim his absolute dominion over every thing created:—and while we make a contrite declaration of our sinfulness, and confess our weakness, to deprecate his wrath, and seek his favour.

### IV.—THE FOUR ENDS OF SACRIFICE.

Exterior sacrifice consists, therefore, in making an oblation to God of something tangible to the senses—of some outward substance to be destroyed, or to undergo some change. The tribute of such a homage is rendered for those four reasons which constitute the various ends of sacrifice. 1. It is

---

\* 1 *Kings*, C. ii. V. 17. In the English Protestant Bible, this is called the first Book of Samuel.

presented to Almighty God to recognize his paramount and absolute dominion over every thing created. 2. To thank him for all those benefits conferred by him upon us. 3. To supplicate a pardon for our sins, and to profess ourselves debtors to his violated justice. 4. To entreat for those helps of grace so absolutely necessary to fortify our weakness.

From the particular intention for which this act of highest worship may be rendered unto heaven, sacrifice derives a peculiar appellation, or is distinguished by a corresponding epithet. It is severally denominated *Latreutical*, or of praise and supreme adoration, *Eucharistic*, or of thanksgiving, *Propitiatory* and *Impetratory*.

V.—THE LEGAL SACRIFICES WERE OF NO AVAIL WHEN  
UNCONNECTED WITH THE FUTURE DEATH  
OF THE REDEEMER.

Of the various sacrifices in use amongst the Jews, the most distinguished were the holocaust, the sin-offering, and the peace-offering. Though these sacrifices were commanded by the sacred law delivered unto Moses, still they were ‘but shadows of the good things to come,’\* ‘weak and needy elements,’† in themselves incapable of pleasing, or appeasing Heaven. They received their virtues from the future death of the Redeemer; and

---

\* *Heb. C. x. V. 1.*

† *Gal. C. iv. V. 9.*

whenever they were possessed of any efficacy, they derived it from the faith of those who offered them, and who contemplated prospectively, and kept steadily in view, the sacred victim,—‘the Lamb unspotted and undefiled,’\* ‘that taketh away the sins of the world,’† and ‘which was slain from the beginning of the world.’‡

#### VI.—A NEW SACRIFICE WAS NECESSARY.

A new sacrifice, the substance of these shadows, was necessary; for the Lord of Hosts had proclaimed to the Jewish people, that he had no pleasure in them,§ and would not receive a gift from their hands; he announced to them that there should be another, and a more acceptable sacrifice offered to his name amongst the Gentiles. The time predicted with so much precision by the prophets, for the appearance of the Messiah, at length arrived; and the Saviour came to offer this clean oblation spoken of by Malachias, to his heavenly Father, saying:—‘Sacrifice and oblation thou wouldest not; but a body thou hast fitted to me. Holocausts for sin did not please thee: then said I: behold I come: in the head of the book it is written of me; that I should do thy will, O God. Sacrifices and oblations thou wouldest not, neither are they pleasing to thee.’||

---

\* 1 *Peter*, C. i. V. 19. † *St. John*, C. i. V. 29 ‡ *Apoc.* C. xiii. V. 8.  
§ *Malach.* C. i. V. 10. || *Heb.* C. x. V. 5-8.

## VII.—THE SACRIFICE OF THE CROSS A TRUE SACRIFICE.

That Jesus Christ, the great high priest, presented to his Father a real sacrifice upon the Cross, upon which he himself was the victim, is a truth upon which the whole of Christianity revolves as on a hinge, for—‘Christ hath loved us, and hath delivered himself for us an oblation, and a sacrifice to God.’\* and—‘we have a great high priest that hath passed into the heavens, Jesus, the Son of God.’†

VIII.—ALL THE ANCIENT SACRIFICES COMPRISED IN IT.  
THE HOLOCAUST.—THE PEACE-OFFERING.—  
THE SIN-OFFERING.

The sacrifice of the Cross was a holocaust ; for our blessed Redeemer offered up himself wholly and entirely without reserve for our offences. And what could possibly become a more acceptable oblation for a sacrifice of peace, than the Word itself made flesh,—of whom the Eternal Father said aloud :—‘This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.’‡ What victim could be better calculated to draw down heaven’s blessings on mankind, than Christ Jesus,—‘who being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God, taking the form of a servant, and humbling himself, becoming obedient unto death, even to the death of the Cross.§

\* *Ephes. C. v. V. 2.*† *Heb. C. iv. V. 14.*‡ *St. Matt. C. xvii. V. 5.*§ *Phil. C. ii. V. 6 8.*

That it was, in fine, an offering for sin, is evident. 'For God indeed was in Christ reconciling the world to himself, not imputing to them their sins :'\* and—'If the blood of goats, or of oxen, and the ashes of a heifer, being sprinkled, sanctify such as are defiled, to the cleansing of the flesh ; how much more shall the blood of Christ, who by the Holy Ghost offered himself unspotted unto God, cleanse our consciences from dead works, to serve the living God ? And therefore is he the mediator of the New Testament, that, by means of his death, for the redemption of those transgressions which were under the former Testament, they that are called may receive the promise of eternal inheritance.'†

IX.—THE UNBLOODY SACRIFICE OF THE NEW LAW.

Although, indeed, it is true that Christ has 'blotted out the handwriting of the decree that was against us, and has taken the same out of the way, fastening it to the Cross ;'‡ and by one oblation hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified ;§ still, it is no less positively certain, that he does not regard it as in any manner deteriorating the inestimable value of that ransom which he had paid for us, or detracting from the all-sufficiency of the sacrifice upon the Cross, not only to have

---

\* 2 Cor. C. v. V. 19.

† Heb. C. ix. V. 13-15.

‡ Coloss. C. ii. V. 14.

§ Heb. C. x. V. 14.

left us the sacraments for our sanctification, but to be our mediator in heaven, where—‘ he is now making intercession for us.’\* This office of mediator he more especially exercises by presenting to his Father that one, same oblation of himself, which he made, in a bloody manner, on Mount Calvary, and now causes to be every day commemorated in an unbloody sacrifice by his delegated priests, throughout the earth; thus realizing the declaration of the Prophet Malachias, that, ‘ from the rising to the setting of the sun, there should be made, amongst the Gentiles, a clean oblation to the Lord of Hosts.’ In this way, too, he discharges the functions of his priesthood: for Christ Jesus ‘ hath an everlasting priesthood:’† he is ‘ a high priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech.’‡ Now it is a doctrine on which St. Paul emphatically insists, that ‘ every high priest is appointed to offer gifts and sacrifices, wherefore it is necessary that he (Christ) also should have something to offer.’§

That any one can really be a priest—that a priest can possibly fulfil that office characteristically distinctive of the sacerdotal order—that a priesthood can exist, and, for a single moment, have its chief and essentially peculiar function exercised, without a real sacrifice, are such glaring

---

\* *Heb. C. vii. V. 25.*

† *Ibid. V. 24.*

‡ *Ibid. C. vi. V. 20.*

§ *Ibid. C. viii. V. 3.*



contradictions, that the most artful ingenuity may toil in vain to reconcile them: for priest, priesthood, and Sacrifice, are co-relative expressions, which necessarily presuppose the existence of each other. Christ, therefore, as a high-priest, must have a real sacrifice, in which a real victim is offered up, according to the rites, and by the ministers belonging to his order of priesthood; but since this priesthood is to be everlasting in its duration, it must, therefore, continue perpetually employed about its functions, the most conspicuous amongst which is sacrifice. That the Christian priesthood, from the period of its foundation to the present moment, has been occupied unceasingly in such an office, is a fact authenticated in every page of profane as well as ecclesiastical history. That this sacrifice called the Mass, which is, and has been, and will continue to be, daily celebrated in the Church, according to the injunctions of its sacred institutor, is that real sacrifice of the new law, we will now proceed to demonstrate by a variety of arguments and proofs derived from Holy Scripture, and furnished by the several monuments of ecclesiastical antiquity.

---

## SECTION II.

## THE MASS A SACRIFICE.

## X.—THE MASS A TRUE SACRIFICE.

That in the Liturgy of the Mass there is offered this real sacrifice, may be evidenced by the most clear and unexceptionable authorities deduced from Sacred Scripture. Such are the figures and prophecies illustrative of the Messiah, contained in the ancient Testament; and in the new, the testimonies of the Evangelists, together with the authority of St. Paul.

## XI.—SACRIFICE OF MELCHISEDECH.

The sacrifice and priesthood of the King of Salem, first demands, and shall receive our notice. In the Book of Genesis, we read, that ‘Melchisedech, the King of Salem,’ brought forth bread, and wine, for he was a priest of the most High God.\* This incident the royal prophet,† and St. Paul in his Epistle to the Hebrews,‡ apply to Christ in such a manner, as not merely to intimate that Melchisedech was a figure only of our divine Redeemer, since the very same might equally be said of Aaron; but that Christ was a priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech, and

---

\* *Gen. C. xiv. V. 18.*

† *Psalms cix. 4.*

‡ *Heb. C. vii.*

not according to the order of Aaron. This St. Paul more unequivocally notices than the royal Psalmist.

From the double kind of difference which so manifestly distinguished the priesthood of Melchisedech from that of Aaron, we may gather two arguments in support of our assertion. The first, and at the same time, the most important difference which characterized them, is found in the matter of sacrifice. Although the sacrifices of the Hebrew sanctuary, and the sacrifice of Melchisedech, agreed with reference to the self same object which they severally typified, as they all were images of the same Christ Jesus; still they varied in their signs. The sacrifices of Aaron were bloody; and, under the species of slaughtered animals, prefigured the passion, and the death of Christ. The sacrifice of Melchisedech was unbloody; and under the form of bread and wine, represented the body and the blood of that same Christ. If, therefore, Christ be a priest, not according to the order of Aaron, but according to the order of Melchisedech; he must have instituted some kind or other of sacrifice, which is an unbloody one, under the species of bread and wine.

That by virtue of his priesthood, Christ had to offer sacrifice, in the species of bread and wine, is immediately deducible from the very type in which it was prefigured. In his sacrifice of bread and wine, Melchisedech, the priest of the most High God, bore the most illustrious figure of

Christ. Hence it follows, that Christ also, in the institution of the blessed Eucharist in bread and wine, not only acted as a priest, but truly sacrificed; since, otherwise, he would not have accurately realized this figure of himself. If the same offering or sacrifice be not continued till the consummation of ages, Christ could not be a priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech.

Another difference will be discovered to exist between the priesthood of Aaron and that of Melchisedech. The priesthood with which the King of Salem was invested, was exclusively of one man alone, who, while he had no predecessor, was not succeeded in his sacerdotal office by any individual. The Aaronic priesthood was communicated to many, not only at the same time, but was regularly kept up by a formal and long-protracted succession. This difference the Apostle of the Gentiles notices in the most particular manner, in his Epistle to the Hebrews, where he says that Melchisedech was ‘without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life;’\* and through the remaining portion of the chapter, applying all those circumstances to Christ, he proclaims of him, that he is a priest for ever, who, while he had no predecessor, will never have a successor; since, not only he himself lives always, but the Lord has sworn

---

\* *Heb. c. vii. v. 3.*

that his priesthood shall neither be changed, nor transferred, as it happened to the Levitical priesthood. This, moreover, St. Paul corroborated by those words, extracted from the Psalmist:—‘The Lord hath sworn, and he will not repent, thou art a priest for ever.’\* Now if the priesthood of Christ is to endure until the end of time, most certainly, the rites and ceremonies of sacrifice must also last as long; unless, indeed, we have the temerity to suppose the priesthood of Jesus to be an empty and a vacant thing, or some idle and imaginary office. The bloody sacrifice upon the Cross, was offered up but once;† it never can be repeated in a bloody manner, since Christ can die no more; for he is now immortal and impassible. There must, therefore, exist some other mode of sacrifice, which is to be perpetually performed; for how can any one be a priest, who has no kind of sacrifice to offer? Priest and sacrifice are terms which mutually imply the existence of each other; a truth so evident, that, as was before observed, St. Paul declares, that ‘every high priest is appointed to offer gifts and sacrifices.’‡ Hence it must be admitted, that in the Church of Christ, there does exist some true form of real sacrifice, which is celebrated by sacerdotal ministers carefully delegated to be the vicegerents upon earth, in the place of Jesus Christ, the great high priest; such a form

---

\* *Psalm cix.* † *Heb. C. x. V. 10.* ‡ *Heb. C. viii. V. 3.*

of sacrifice is discoverable no where, except in the holy and tremendous sacrifice usually denominated the Mass.\*

---

\* Here the reader must be admonished of a serious imposition which has been practised by the Protestant translators of the New Testament, not only on the members of the Church of England, but on every one who may chance to read her version of the Holy Scriptures. In his Epistle to the Hebrews, the Apostle says:—‘ In the which will, we are sanctified by the oblation of the body of Jesus Christ once;’ (*Heb. x. 10.*) which sentence is thus translated in the Protestant Version:—‘ By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once *for all*.’ Here we have ‘*for all*’ added to the genuine text, for there is not a syllable of it either in the Greek original, or in the Latin vulgate. It is impossible to consider this ingraftment on the word of God, as the result of accident or negligence; on the contrary, we must refer it to deliberate design, for the following reasons.

1. The Greek adverb, *ἐφάπαξ*, ‘once,’ but very seldom occurs in the New Testament, and only in the writings of St. Paul. Besides the one at present under observation, the following are the only passages in which it may be found: *Rom. vi. 10*, *Heb. ix. 12*, *1 Cor. xv. 6*. In all these places, the Protestant translators have rendered it by ‘*once*,’ or ‘*at once*,’ they, therefore, knew its proper force, and could render it according to its native meaning.
2. The unwarrantable introduction of these two monosyllables—‘*for all*,’ essentially corrupts this text, and perverts its sense against the Catholic, in favour of the Protestant doctrine on the holy Eucharist. No doubt, therefore, but they were advisedly inserted, to procure a scrip-

The only point of mutual but exclusive coincidence between the priesthood of Melchisedech and that of Christ, is an identity of matter—bread and wine—employed in the sacrifice.

The King of Salem received tithes of Abraham, and blessed him and his companions; but the Levitical priesthood also collected tithes, and bestowed their benedictions; if Melchisedech had

---

tural authority for one of the novelties introduced by what is miscalled the Reformation. In fact, this citation from the writings of St. Paul, is invariably adduced in its *vitiated form*, as a warrant for that modern doctrine first promulgated in England by the framers of the thirty-first amongst those articles of religion recognized by the established Church, which teaches, that—‘The Sacrifices of Masses, in the which it was commonly said, that the priest did offer Christ for the quick and the dead to have remission of pain and guilt, were blasphemous fables, and dangerous deceits.’

When the intelligent and sensible Protestant reflects that there is not one single personage registered in that calendar of Saints, appended to his book of Common Prayer, who did not live and die, or win the palm of martyrdom, in the belief of the Catholic doctrine of the Mass; and that many of them were in the habit of daily offering up that Eucharistic sacrifice—he will censure the temerity, at the same that he blushes for the inconsistency of his Church, in designating the practice of those very men whom she herself has recognized for Saints, as a blasphemous fable,—and pronouncing the most venerable and best authenticated tenet amongst the articles of genuine Christianity, as a ‘dangerous deceit.’

not been anointed with oil, had succeeded no one in the priestly office, nor was followed by any successor ; the same may be observed in Abel ; if his genealogy was unknown—an incident, however, quite extraneous to the priesthood ; this was common to Job, and others who were priests. The only way in which the priesthood of Melchisedech differed from every other priesthood before the promulgation of the second law, was in the oblation of bread and wine. This, therefore, must constitute the agreement between the sacrifice of Melchisedech, and the sacrifice of Christ, who selected wheaten bread and wine of the grape, as the matter which should be transubstantiated into his body and his blood by the words of consecration.

That the motive which induced Melchisedech to bring forth bread and wine, was not to present refreshment to the soldiers of Abraham, but to offer sacrifice to God in celebration of that Patriarch's victory, is evident, both from the language and the context of this passage in the Book of Genesis.

If Abraham and his servants partook of Melchisedech's oblation of bread and wine ; it was for them a sacred refection, similar to those observed amongst the Israelites in their sacrifices of thanksgiving. It could not have been by way of corporal refreshment, since the sacred text informs us,\*

---

\* *Gen. xiv. 24.* Some Protestants quarrel with the reading of this passage in our Catholic Bibles, and contend,



that Abraham's soldiers had already feasted on the provisions which they found among the spoils that they captured from the vanquished Kings.

XII.—THE SACRIFICE OF MELCHISEDECH ELUCIDATED  
BY THE WRITINGS OF THE FATHERS.

That the Church has invariably considered this passage in the Book of Genesis as demonstrative, not only of Melchisedech's having sacrificed in bread and wine ; but, also, that his oblation was

---

that the Hebrew particle '*vau*' should be rendered as it is in the Protestant Version, '*and* he was a priest,' instead of '*for* he was,' &c. In defence of the Catholic translation of the particle '*vau*,' as preferable to the one followed in this particular passage, by the authorized Bible of the Church of England, we may observe:—1st, That St. Jerom, a most eminent Biblical scholar, and a thorough master of the Hebrew language, has thus given the passage in his vulgate:—'*Erat enim sacerdos*,' '*for he was a priest*:' With consistent Protestants, St. Jerom's authority must possess great weight, as they refer to his opinion with so much deference in the sixth of the thirty-nine articles. 2d, Grammarians inform us, that this particle is not only copulative, but indicative of a cause, and that the manner of construing it must be collected from the series of the discourse. Parker, in his Hebrew Lexicon, enumerates as many as seventeen different ways in which it is employed in Scripture. 3d, The English Protestant, like the Catholic Bible, has the particle '*vau*' translated by the word '*for*,' instead of '*and*,' in the very same Book of Genesis ; (*Gen. xx. 3.*) the Hebrew text is וְהָיָה מַלְכִּי־צֶדֶק —literally thus, '*and she is mar-*

beautifully typical of the Eucharistic sacrifice peculiar to the Christian dispensation, is evident from the attestations of the holy Fathers. For a proof of this, the curious reader is referred to a learned and invaluable work containing extracts from the writings of those early and venerable witnesses of the Faith.\* In that volume are recited the observations on this subject delivered by St. Cyprian,† Eusebius of Cæsarea,‡ St. Jerom,§ and Theodoret.||

XIII.—ILLUSTRATED BY AN ANCIENT MOSAIC AT  
RAVENNA.

But there is another curious and highly interesting illustration of this text, which, as far as the writer is aware, has hitherto never been introduced to notice. This is furnished by one amongst those numerous pictorial monuments of early Christian piety which decorate the ancient church of St. Vitalis at Ravenna.¶ The wall about the apsis or

---

ried to a husband,'—but which is rendered in the Protestant Version, '*for* she is a man's wife.' No Protestant can therefore rationally object to a mode of translation which is approved by his own Church, in her authorized version of the Sacred Scriptures.

\* *The Faith of Catholics confirmed and attested by the Fathers of the first five centuries, compiled by the Rev. Joseph Berington, and the Rev. John Kirk, London, 1830.*

† *Ib.* p. 271. ‡ *Ib.* p. 273. § *Ib.* p. 281. || *Ib.* p. 286.

¶ *Ciampini, Monimenta Vetera, tom. ii. p. 70, tab. xxi.*

recess, which overhangs the sanctuary, is encrusted with mosaic-work, in which are represented various subjects, chosen from the Old and New Testaments. Amongst those Scripture histories, three are prominently discernible : they are, the sacrifice of Abel ; the sacrifice of Isaac by Abraham, and the sacrifice of Melchisedech.

MELCHISEDEC



Figure of Melchisedech in an ancient Mosaic in the church of St. Vitalis at Ravenna.\*

The King of Salem is represented as standing by an altar, on which are two small circular cakes,

---

The church of St. Vitalis was built in the year 547, and adorned with mosaics at the same epoch.

\* The wood-cut is as faithful a delineation of the Ravenna Mosaic, as could be procured ; the reader, therefore, when he remarks its want of perspective, and the awkward, if not impossible position of Melchisedech's left foot, should remember, that such defects and inaccuracies are characteristic of the time when the original was executed.

between which stands a little vase, not much unlike a drinking cup; a nimbus, or glory, surrounds his head; his arms are outstretched towards the altar, almost in the same way that our priests extend theirs at Mass, when they spread their hands over the sacramental elements, and recite the prayer—‘*Hanc igitur*,’ &c. just before the consecration. His robes exactly resemble our vestments of the sanctuary; the under one descends to the ankles like an Alb; and the tunic, or mantle, is fashioned precisely as the ancient Chasuble, and like it, is a garment adapted to envelope the whole person, but gathered up above the shoulders, for greater convenience during the oblation of the sacrifice:\* in fact, Melchisedech, both in attitude and costume, is nothing but the figure of a priest celebrating Mass. There can be no doubt, that these three subjects, and particularly the sacrifice of Melchisedech, were selected to indicate that they were ancient types of the sacrifice of the new Law, called the Mass. Theophilus, the Patriarch of Antioch,† remarks, that Melchisedech is represented with the circle of glory round his head, to signify that he was the first man who became a priest; and St. Cyprian‡ notices, that the bread and little vessel are symbols of the blessed sacra-

---

\* See Ch. XII, *on the Vestments*, No. 41.

† Lib. II, *ad Autolyicum circa finem*.

‡ In Epist. LXIII, *ad Caecilium de sacramento Domini*.

ment. Indeed, these observations on these three sacrifices are all but asserted in that prayer which almost immediately succeeds the consecration;— Upon which, (the holy bread of eternal life and the chalice of our everlasting salvation) vouchsafe to look down with a propitious and serene countenance, and accept them, as thou wast pleased to accept the gifts of thy just servant Abel, and the sacrifice of our Patriarch Abraham, and that which thy high-priest Melchisedech, offered to thee, a holy sacrifice and immaculate victim.” This representation, therefore, of the offering of bread and wine, by Melchisedech, affords another ancient warrant for regarding it as a prefiguration of the sacrifice of the Mass.\*

---

† In those ages, when printing was unknown, the pastors of the Church availed themselves of the arts to represent to their people, by means of fresco-painting, mosaic-work, and sculpture, executed on the walls of the churches, the scripture-history, and the truths of our holy religion. The reason was obvious: to the faithful, these were instructive volumes, written in intelligible and self-speaking characters. But as their religious instructors justly conceived that the guardians of the faith, were the best expounders of its mysteries, instead of permitting the artist to select and treat the subjects according to his own imagination; they rather employed his pencil to inscribe, in colours, what they dictated to him; and it is a well attested fact, that, in the early ages of the Church, painters, and those who wrought in mosaic, and artists in general, were, in the execution of their works, permitted

## XIV.—THE PASCHAL LAMB A FIGURE OF THE SACRIFICE OF THE MASS.

A second argument to prove the Mass to be a real sacrifice, may be drawn from the ceremony of the Paschal Lamb!\* That the oblation of this victim was a figure of the Eucharist, is evident from the words of the Apostle, who tells us ;—" Christ our Pasch is sacrificed, therefore let us feast, not with the old leaven, but with the leaven of sincerity and truth."† From the Evangelists we learn that, immediately after our Divine Redeemer had concluded the legal observance of the Passover, he proceeded to celebrate the Eucharist. By the

---

to exercise their own liberty and invention, no further than in the drawing and colouring of their pieces. The bishop, or pastor of the edifice which was to be ornamented, not merely fixed upon the subjects, but invariably prescribed the precise manner in which each one should be treated in all its several, and even its smallest parts. (*Anastasius Bibliothecarius de vitis Romanorum Pontificum Curante Blanchino*, Vol. iii. p. 124.) Nor did they permit themselves to be directed by their own caprice, while guiding the labours of the painter or the sculptor ; but most religiously adhered to the traditions which had been handed down to them. We may, therefore, rest assured, that these ancient monuments are faithful and authentic records, not of the opinion of Laics, and private individuals, but of the public doctrine of the Church at the period when they were executed.

\* *Exod. C. xii.*† *1 Cor. C. v. V. 7, 8.*

identity of place and time, he more unequivocally assured his followers, that the substance had, at length, arrived to realize the shadow, and that the old law, with its ceremonies, was abrogated, and made to yield its place to a new and better Testament. If we consider the circumstances attending on both these solemn rites, we shall observe, that there was no one single figure of the ancient law, which bore a reference to Jesus the Messiah, which was so accurately fulfilled by him, as the ceremonial of the Paschal Lamb, in the institution of the Eucharistic Sacrifice.

1. It was directed that the Paschal Lamb should be sacrificed on the evening of the fourteenth day of the first month:\* a circumstance, of which particular notice was taken by the law, and in consequence, the Jews most diligently observed it: now it was immediately after having celebrated the passover with legal exactness, that our divine redeemer instituted the blessed Eucharist.
2. The Paschal Lamb was immolated in remembrance of the passage of the Lord, and the liberation of the Israelites from their Egyptian bondage: the Eucharist is offered to commemorate the passage of our Saviour, by his bloody passion, from this world to the kingdom of his father; and to celebrate our redemption from the tyranny of Satan, over whom Christ Jesus tri-

---

\* *Exod. C. xii. V. 6.*

umphed by his glorious death upon the cross.

3. The Paschal Lamb was offered that it might be eaten and be as it were, the sustenance to fortify the traveller for a lengthened journey on which he was about to enter ; since it was in the guise of travellers, that the Jews partook of it with their loins girt up, holding staves in their hands, and having sandals on their feet : and what is the Eucharist but a strengthening food, a sacred refection for men while on their pilgrimage through this desert-world, and journeying towards the land of promise,—Heaven their real and celestial country. 4. The Paschal Lamb could not be eaten excepting by the clean and circumcised, and within the precincts of the holy city ; so the Eucharist cannot be partaken of with profit, but by those who have been baptized, are clean of heart and purified from sin, and by being associated with the Catholic Church, are ‘come to Mount Sion and to the City of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousands of Angels, and to the Church of the first born who are written in the heavens, and to God the judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect.’\*

The Paschal Lamb was at the same time a sacrifice and a sacrament ; because, after it had been offered up, it was eaten by the Israelites ; so

---

\* *Heb. C. xii. V. 22, 25.*



likewise, the Eucharistic oblation is a sacrifice and a sacrament, a sacrifice, because our Pasch, Christ Jesus is presented to his Father on our altars, and a sacrament, because the faithful receive him there, whose 'flesh is meat indeed, and whose blood is drink indeed.'

XV.—ACCOMPLISHMENT OF THE PROPHECY OF MALACHIAS, IN THE SACRIFICE OF THE MASS.

Another and most conclusive proof in favor of the Sacrifice of the Mass, is furnished by the Prophet Malachias who was commissioned to promulgate the following commination to the Jewish people. 'I have no pleasure in you, saith the Lord of Hosts. For, from the rising of the sun even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles, and in every place there is offered to my name a clean oblation, for my name is great among the Gentiles, saith the Lord of Hosts.'\*

This illustrious prediction cannot be applicable to the Jewish sacrifices, because they are pointedly rejected, and so far from being offered up in every place, they were exclusively confined to the temple of Jerusalem; while the clean oblation which Malachias speaks of, was to be made in every region of the earth, and not by Israelites, but Gentiles. It cannot be referable to the un-

---

\* *Malach. C. i. V. 10, 11.*

hallowed and impure rites of Paganism, which profaned, instead of glorifying, the name of the Almighty. It cannot be applied to designate that bloody sacrifice immolated on the altar of the Cross at Calvary, since that was offered once only, and in one place. It is, therefore, verified in no other way, than by the unbloody sacrifice, by that clean oblation which is, and will be offered up by the Christian priesthood to the end of time, and in every nation that the sun can gaze upon, from his rising to his setting. This prophecy, therefore, refers to the Eucharistic sacrifice of our altars, called the Mass, which now supplies the place of all the ancient victims, and has been unceasingly celebrated from the death of Christ until the present moment, and continues to be every where duly celebrated.

Some amongst the innovators of the sixteenth century, to neutralize the force of this triumphant argument, endeavoured to affix a spiritual meaning to the prophet's declaration, and therefore interpreted it as expressive of a sacrifice, improperly so called, of praise and thanksgiving, of prayer, good works, and patience. Nothing, however, could be more erroneous than this modern gloss upon the inspired pages. 1. The word—קִרְבָּן, which occurs in the original Hebrew text of this prophecy, indicates a particular species of sacrifice, in which fine flour, oil, and frankincense, commingled together, were employed as the obla-

tion: \* and it should be remarked that the holy Scriptures, whenever the term 'sacrifice' is used in a figurative sense, invariably attach some adjunct to it, which immediately discriminates the metaphoric meaning; and hence, in various portions of the sacred volume, we meet with the following expressions:—'a sacrifice of praise,'—'a sacrifice of righteousness,'—'a sacrifice of joy,' &c. The *Minchah*† of the Hebrew scripture is translated by the word *θυσια*, or sacrifice, in the Septuagint, and is the term employed to signify the oblation of Cain and of Abel.‡ 2. That it cannot be, with accuracy, understood of a spiritual offering composed of prayer, devotion, or thanksgivings, will immediately be evident, when we remember that such a kind of sacrifice had, after the days of Malachias, who lived about four hundred years anterior to the coming of the Messiah, been rendered very frequently, by Jew as well as Gentile, and had indeed been made from the earliest period of the human race, by every sincere adorer of the Deity; whereas the prophet announces the future institu-

---

\* *Levit. C. ii. V. 1, and C. vi. V. 14, 15.*

† Gesenius, in his Hebrew Lexicon, which has been translated into English by Christopher Leo, says of this word:—'In the Mosaic ritual, it is applied especially to the unbloody sacrifices—as offerings of meat and drink, which were offered with the animal sacrifices. Hence *Sacrifice and offering*, *Ps. xl. V. 7. Jer. C. xvii. V. 26. Dan. C. ix. V. 27.*

‡ *Gen. C. iv. V. 4, 5.*

tion of a pure oblation,—a sacrifice peculiar to a subsequent covenant, and which was not only to be exclusively offered up by Gentile believers, but should supersede all the various Levitical sacrifices which would then be abrogated.

XVI.—CHRIST ANNOUNCES A NEW SACRIFICE.

That a new sacrifice, which should be offered up ‘in spirit and in truth,’\* was requisite, our divine Redeemer proclaimed to the Samaritan woman, who proposed to him the question about the place on which it was necessary to adore. Now, that the adoration indicated by our blessed Redeemer is synonymous with sacrifice, may be inferred from a variety of circumstances: for the difference between the Jews and the Samaritans, was about the place on which the exterior worship of sacrifice could legally be exhibited, since both were thoroughly persuaded that man could invoke the Lord by supplications and by prayers,—could observe the various forms of simple adoration,—and present his heart to Heaven, in every region of the earth. Our divine Redeemer entered into the idea of the Samaritan woman, and answered her by saying:—‘The hour cometh, when you shall neither on this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, adore the Father; or, in other words, the time is fast approaching, when sacrifice shall be no longer

---

\* *John*, C. iv. *V.* 23.

offered, either on Mount Gerizim, or in the Jewish temple; but true adorers shall adore the Father in spirit and in truth, without being circumscribed within the limits of one peculiar or favoured city, by a new and better sacrifice; spiritual,—not carnal; true, and not typical or figurative; effected by the holy spirit, and the mysterious words of consecration,—not by pouring out the blood of goats and of oxen, nor by sprinkling the ashes of a heifer; illustrious, not from being a shadow of the good things to come, but because it is that very thing itself, the adorable reality.

XVII.—THE SACRIFICE OF THE MASS PROVED FROM  
ST. PAUL.

‘Fly,’ exclaims the Apostle of the Gentiles,—  
‘Fly from the service of idols. I speak as to wise men: judge ye yourselves what I say. The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? and the bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord? For we, being many, are one bread, one body, all that partake of one bread: behold Israel according to the flesh; are not they, that eat of the sacrifices, partakers of the altar? What then! Do I say that what is offered in sacrifice to idols is any thing? or that the idol is any thing? But the things which the heathens sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God. And I would not that you should be made partakers with

devils. You cannot drink the chalice of the Lord and the chalice of devils ; you cannot be partakers of the table of the Lord, and of the table of devils.\*

This passage from St. Paul proves, by a triple argument, the Mass to be a real sacrifice.

1. The Apostle institutes a comparison between the table of the Lord, where the believers in Jesus receive the holy Eucharist, and the table of the Gentiles, who sacrifice to idols, and the table of the Jews, on which the people offered up their carnal victims to the true and living God. From this parallel it follows, that the table of the Lord is an altar, and consequently, the Eucharist a proper sacrifice ; for, without a most egregious anomaly in language, an altar can never be erected, unless for the purposes of real sacrifice. 2. The Apostle institutes a comparison between the Eucharist, and the sacrifices of the Jews and Gentiles. He declares, by the most unequivocal expressions, that, as the faithful receive at the table of the Lord, the body and the blood of Christ,—so the Jews participate in those victims, and the Gentiles, in the immolation which they severally offer up in sacrifice upon their respective altars. St. Paul's comparison would, however, not only be quite imperfect, but utterly inapplicable, if the Eucharist were not as much a real sacrifice to the Almighty,

---

\* 1 Cor. C. x. V. 14-21.

as were the victims which the Hebrew nation sacrificed to him, and the immolations and libations of the Gentiles, made in honour of their imaginary Deities. 3. The Apostle traces a resemblance between that society which the Christian has with the Godhead, by a participation in the sacred Eucharist, and the society which the Gentile formed with his idols, by eating those meats which had been offered in their honour. He teaches that the individual who partakes of the victim sacrificed to idols, becomes himself an idolater; and hence he exhorts the believers at Corinth, to 'fly from the service of idols.' While urging such advice, he employs this train of argument; 'those who eat of the sacrifices partake of the altar,' and consequently unite with the heathens, as they sacrifice to devils, and therefore, make themselves their worshippers.

If the form of argument adopted by St. Paul be just, we may pursue it in reasoning on the Eucharist; and conclude, that those who eat of that venerable oblation, become partakers of 'the table of the Lord,' and consequently, join in offering that victim immolated to God, and identify themselves with those who make it,—and, in this manner, honour Heaven, by the most solemn, as well as the highest act of adoration; and thus verify the assertion of the Apostle of the Gentiles, who assures the Hebrews, in his Epistle to them, that we 'have

an altar, whereof they have no power to eat who serve the tabernacle.\*

That in the Mass there is offered a real and propitiatory sacrifice to God, is a truth, not only declared in Scripture, but corroborated by the history and the institutions of the Church;†and unanimously attested by the writings of her Pastors, in characters as brilliant as the stars that light the firmament. Volumes might be filled with such testimonies, but, for want of space, I must reluctantly pass on without gleaning, and offering to the reader, the most conspicuous amongst them. There is, however, one in particular, so very appropriate and interesting, that it would be unpardonable not to bestow on it especial notice.

Who is ignorant of the tender but afflicting scene which took place at the separation of the

---

\* *Heb. C. xiii. V. 10.*

† For a triumphant illustration of those arguments in proof of the sacrifice of the Mass, deduced from the liturgies and ceremonials of the Church,—the inquisitive and learned reader is referred to a work entitled ‘Christianity; or the evidences and characters of the Christian religion,’ (*London, 1827.*) the masterly performance of the late Right Rev. Dr. Poynter, a prelate conspicuous for his piety, his enlightened zeal, and profound theological learning. He who pens this notice rejoices to possess the present opportunity of recording his tribute of reverence to the memory of that venerable bishop, some extracts from whose work are found in Appendix II.



hoary and venerable Xystus, the second of that name who filled the throne of St. Peter, and the youthful and heroic St. Laurence, while the lictors of the Emperor Valerian\* dragged the holy Pope to martyrdom? As the pontiff was led away, his Deacon St. Laurence followed weeping; and, at last, burst forth into this pathetic exclamation:— ‘ Father, whither are you going without your son? whither are you hastening, O holy priest, without your deacon? You were never wont to offer sacrifice without me your minister: wherein have I now displeased you? have you found me wanting in my duty? Try me now, and see whether you have made choice of an unfit minister for dispensing the blood of Christ!’†

---

\* The Emperor Valerian issued his cruel edicts against the Church in the year 257.

† *Butler's Lives of the Saints*, vol. viii. p. 139.

## SECTION III.

## ON THE REAL PRESENCE.

## XVIII.—THE REAL PRESENCE.

From reviewing the proofs which so clearly establish the Mass to be a real sacrifice, we naturally proceed to investigate another most important tenet comprehended in that doctrine.

For eighteen centuries the Catholic Church has been sedulous in teaching, as one amongst those articles of faith delivered to her by the Apostles, who received it from the lips of truth itself, the Son of God, that in the sacrament of the altar usually denominated the Eucharist,\* are received the real Body and the real Blood, together with the soul and the divinity of Jesus Christ—the very ‘word made flesh,’ which, conceived by the Holy

---

\* The primitive Fathers denominate the sacrament instituted by our Saviour at the Last Supper, by the term Eucharist, a Greek word which signifies ‘thanksgiving.’ Such an appellation is most appropriate, since it intimates that our Redeemer offered up thanksgivings to the Lord at its institution; and also instructs us concerning the necessity of presenting our grateful thanks to heaven, whenever we receive this abridgment of all God’s wonders; this standing memorial of our redemption through the blood of Jesus; and the pledge of a bright eternity.

Ghost, and born of the blessed Virgin Mary—was afterwards affixed to the cross, and died for our redemption. The following are some-amongst the numerous arguments she exhibits for her unvarying belief in such a dogma.

**XIX.—THE PROMISE MADE BY CHRIST THAT HE WOULD GIVE US HIS FLESH AND BLOOD TO EAT AND DRINK.**

In the sixth chapter of St. John, we observe that Jesus, after having wrought so great a miracle as that of feeding five thousand persons in the desert with five barley loaves and two small fishes, took occasion to unfold the doctrine of the real presence to the wondering multitude. The Evangelist informs us that the Saviour thus addressed them;—‘I am the living bread that came down from heaven; if any man eat of this bread he shall live for ever; and the bread that I will give is my flesh, for the life of the world. The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying, how can this man give us his flesh to eat? Then Jesus said to them: Amen, Amen I say unto you: except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, you shall not have life in you. He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath everlasting life, and I will raise him up at the last day. For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed. He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, abideth in me and I in him; as the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father, so he that

eateth me, the same also shall live by me. This is the bread that came down from heaven. Not as your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness and are dead. He that eateth of this bread shall live for ever. Many, therefore, of his disciples hearing it, said: this saying is hard, and who can hear it? After this, many of his disciples went back, and walked no more with him.\*

This passage of scripture claims our particular attention. Here our divine Redeemer promises to give his followers an especial kind of nourishment—a food which would surpass the manna of the desert—itsself a wondrous bread—the bread of angels,† rained down from heaven, where it was miraculously produced, and which exhibited such wonders in all its several circumstances. ‘When the dew fell in the night upon the camp, the manna also fell with it.’‡ It fell only round about the camp of the Israelites, and that too every day except the Sabbath.§ In such quantities did this bread of heaven rain down upon the Jews for those forty years of their wandering through the wilderness, that it was sufficient to nourish the whole multitude of more than a million of people, each one of whom, though he might gather, could not secure, except on the sabbath, more than sufficient for his daily maintenance, which was a gomor, or, accord-

---

\* *St John C. vi. V. 51-59, 61-67.*

† *Ps. lxxvii. V. 25.*

‡ *Numb. C. xi. V. 7.*

§ *Exod. C. xvi. V. 27.*

ing to our English measure, about three quarts.\* Every sixth day it came down in double quantities, and though it infallibly putrified when reserved beyond one single day, yet on the Sabbath it never suffered such an alteration.† This same manna which melted away before the beams of the morning sun, when left in the fields, on being conveyed within the tent, acquired such hardness and consistency as to be ground in the mill or pounded in a mortar; and would even so far resist the action and the heat of fire, as to be boiled in a pot, and made up into cakes.‡ Any bread therefore, which could possibly surpass it in excellence, must be wondrous indeed; hence that food alluded to by Christ, and signified to be superior to the manna of the ancient Israelites, must, like it, not only come from heaven, but comprehend still greater wonders; and that it did, is evident from every expression of our Saviour.

1. His future gift was not to be common—inert—inanimate bread, but *living bread*,§ consequently with life in it, quickened with a spirit; yes, it was to be—it is the very flesh of Jesus, animated by his radiant, spotless soul, and sanctified by its union with his divinity. 2. But this is not all: if we interrogate the sacred text concerning the nature of that bread from heaven, with which the Re-

---

\* *Exod. C. xvi. V. 18.*

† *Exod. C. xvi. V. 20-22.*

‡ *Numb. C. xi. V. 8.*

§ *St. John. C vi. V. 51.*

deemer pledged himself to furnish all his faithful followers; he himself, not merely once by accident, but oftentimes and formally repeated for answer, that the food he promised, was to be his true, his very flesh; 'his flesh indeed, his blood indeed.' The Jews were scandalized; they asserted that it was impossible, as they cried aloud;—how can this man give us his flesh to eat? This is a hard saying and who can hear it?

Now, abstracting from that celestial charity, which instead of placing, would rather have removed the stone of scandal in the path of those who sought and trusted to its guidance; abstracting from a sacred love for truth; even common honesty would have imperatively demanded, that Christ, the author of all truth—veracity itself—should not allow a portion of his disciples to abandon him, merely through a misrepresentation of one single sentence, which, according to their unanimous and public construction of it, uttered in his presence, insisted on a tenet which he never intended to promulgate, especially since it would have cost no further trouble than a word to disabuse them of their error, had it been one; and to develope the real meaning of his doctrine, had they misconstrued it. While it is certain that the Jews literally understood our Saviour as having intimated that he would give them his very flesh and blood, to be their nourishment; it is at the same time equally conspicuous, that he intended to

define in clear and intelligible language, how they were to understand his words. Instead, however, of correcting the notion that possessed them, of his having said they were to eat his real flesh and drink his real blood, by attaching a figurative meaning to his words; he not only reiterates the self same expressions, and several times repeats the self same doctrine; but employs a most solemn formula of speech in use among the Jews, in order to affix still more deeply in their minds the impression of a real presence, and to satisfy them that they had rightly construed the import of his discourse, which was, that they should have his real flesh and blood to eat and drink. Nor does he once so much as remotely insinuate that he was to be understood as having spoken in a figurative manner.

As it was fitting that veracity itself should not allow his chosen apostles, his numerous disciples, thousands among the Jews, and millions of Christians in after ages, to mistake the meaning of his expression on a subject of primary importance, we may legitimately conclude, that had the multitude been wrong in interpreting his discourse to indicate a manducation of his real flesh and blood, far from declining to resolve a difficulty, and remove the scandal which alienated from his preaching so many 'who walked with him no more,' the Saviour would not have hesitated to rectify the error, especially in reference to his Apostles, whom

he had selected to receive, and afterwards disseminate, the knowledge of his doctrines; but would have pursued the same course on this occasion, which he invariably followed in other less important instances. It was his custom to explain, at least to his disciples, whatever might have been at first unintelligible in his public preaching to the multitude, or in his private conferences with themselves. Nicodemus could not comprehend the words of our divine Redeemer on the necessity of Baptism; and this ruler of the Jews, in consequence, observed:—‘How can a man be born again when he is old?’ But Jesus removed the difficulty by unveiling the import of his words, as he answered:—‘Unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.’\* The disciples did not comprehend him when he bade them beware of the leaven of the Pharisees; but while he chided their inaccurate interpretation of this expression, he informed them that he animadverted on the pernicious doctrines of those Hebrew teachers. On another occasion, Jesus remarked to his Apostles:—‘I have meat to eat which ye know not of.’ They misconstrued the observation, and demanded if any man had brought him any thing to eat? But in explanation of what he had said, he answered them:—‘My meat is to do the will of him that

---

\* *St. John, C. iii. V. 5.*



sent me.\* Towards the conclusion of his discourse, our Saviour referred to his future ascension. He noticed it as a circumstance which would oppose still greater difficulties to be surmounted by those amongst his auditors whose present incredulity refused to believe, that, although he was actually present, he could possibly give them his flesh and blood. Had, then, our divine Redeemer promised to bequeath nothing more than a bit of common bread, which should represent his body, it is impossible to imagine how the Jews would have had to experience greater difficulty in believing such a doctrine, after, than before Christ's ascension. This is evident; for a sign to which a specific meaning is once unequivocally affixed, is, at all times, equally intelligible to the parties initiated in its import. If, on the other hand, Christ intended, as he really did, to assure his followers that he would bestow his very flesh and blood, to be their Sacramental nourishment; then, indeed, we immediately perceive the force of our Saviour's reference to his future ascension; we understand how what appeared so 'hard' to the intelligence of his followers, the very moment while they viewed him standing in the body visible and palpable amongst them, would necessarily become ten thousand times more difficult to their stubborn belief, at a subsequent period, when they should be-

---

\* *St. John, C. iv. V. 32-34.*

hold his body taken up, and wafted in radiance to the throne of God. Unless our Saviour had been anxious to persuade the Jews that the bread from heaven about to be given to the world, was not a symbolic piece of bread, but his real body; he never would have studied, by predicting the miraculous event of his elevation into heaven, to induce them, when it should be realized, 'to submit their reason to the obedience of faith.' When, therefore, we learn that our Jesus, knowing in himself that his disciples murmured at this, said to them; 'doth this scandalize you? If then you shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before?\*' We are certain that he insisted still more pointedly in requiring belief in the Eucharist: we hear him teaching his disciples that after the removal of his body from among them, and in the absence of the natural appearances of flesh and blood, they were, however, to have no hesitation in acquiescing in this mysterious dogma. Hence we may collect, that our Lord in promulgating this tenet of the real presence, noticed in its favour, the very argument, which its adversaries at the present hour wield in combating against it, whilst they assert that the body and blood of Christ must be as far from our altars, as heaven is from earth: though they teach that 'the body and blood of Christ are

---

\* *St. John, C. vi. V. 62.*

verily and indeed taken and received by the faithful in the Lord's supper.\*

XX—OBJECTION ANSWERED.

Against these arguments, are advanced by the impugnors of this tenet, those words of Christ;—‘It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing.’† Such an expression, however, instead of invalidating, fortifies the doctrine of the real presence.

It was not until Christ had no less than six several times asserted, with much solemnity, and in the most explicit language, that his flesh and blood should be really present and given in the sacrament, that he observed, ‘it is the spirit that quickeneth,’ &c. Had it therefore, been his purport, in this latter sentence, to correct the interpretation that the multitude affixed to his former asseverations, which they construed as signifying the manducation of his very body—had he really

---

\* The last answer but three in the Protestant Catechism in the book of Common Prayer. How the inconsistencies, to say nothing of the irreligion of the innovators of the sixteenth century, are exhibited when those men abridge the omnipotence of God, by denying the possibility of Christ's being present in the holy Eucharist; though at the self same moment, they maintain that his body and his blood are verily and indeed taken and received, though it is not possible for them to be verily and indeed given.

† *St. John C. vi. V. 64.*

insinuated in the faintest manner, that the Eucharist did not contain, but was a figure only of his flesh and blood; is it not self evident that not only those Jews who 'strove amongst themselves,' and so loudly vociferated 'how can this man give us his flesh to eat,' but such among the disciples also who experienced the belief in a real eating of his body to be a thing so 'hard' to recognize, would have encountered no difficulty either in comprehending such a doctrine, or in yielding their assent to it; and, instead of walking no more with their teacher, would have been more anxious to follow him, and to listen to his precepts; and yet, what happened? They took scandal at his words, and abandoned him. The retiring disciples, therefore, openly assure us by their desertion of Jesus Christ, the very moment after he had uttered this expression, that they did not understand him to indicate by it; that the former parts of his discourse about the eating of his flesh and blood, were to be explained in a figurative manner, but on the contrary, conceived him to reiterate, if possible with greater earnestness than ever, the doctrine of the real presence.

The words of Christ on which this objection against the real presence has been attempted but without success to be erected, bear a twofold interpretation. It is not unusual with the writers of the sacred volumes to designate the carnal and human reason of man, by the word 'flesh,' whilst

they employ the term 'spirit,' to signify the grace of God and the inspirations of the Holy Ghost. Such a form of language is more particularly discernible when their object is to oppose the one, in contrast with the other. Jesus declared to St. Peter ;—'Flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but my Father who is in heaven.'\* St. Paul admonishes the Romans that the faithful 'walk not according to the flesh, but according to the spirit.'† Our Saviour while insisting on the manducation of his real body, in answer to the argument which the Jews, like the modern sceptics, deduced from human reason and their senses against its possibility, observed that at the same time it was incompetent for flesh or carnal reason to decide on such a dogma ; it was only by the grace of God—the light of heaven—'the quickening spirit,' that it could be believed in, or discerned, and hence he immediately remarked ;—'There are some of you who believe not.....therefore did I say unto you, that no man can come unto me unless it be given him by my Father.'‡ How remarkably coincident is this expression of the Saviour, with the one he uttered when St. Peter acknowledged his divinity ;—'Flesh and blood hath not revealed it to thee, but my Father who is in heaven.'§

An extract from the commentaries of St. Augus-

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xvi. V. 17.*

† *Rom. C. viii. V. 4.*

‡ *St. John, C. v. V. 65, 66*

§ *St. Matt. C. xvi. V. 17.*

tin, will not only furnish a second illustration of this passage, but will likewise testify what was the general belief of the Church upon the Eucharist, so far back as fourteen hundred years ago, when that zealous and learned Father, instead of perceiving any argument could be extracted against that sacrament from the words of our Redeemer; on the other hand, adduced them, in his public instructions to the people on the real presence, in order to assure them, that, though the body of Christ, as mere simple flesh and blood, and separated from his soul and divinity, might not profit any thing, yet, when animated by that blessed spirit and his divine nature, they profited a great deal. Hence it is that he exclaims;—‘What means the flesh profiteth nothing? It profits nothing as the Jews understand it—as it is torn in pieces in a dead body—or sold in the shambles. But it profits, as quickened by the spirit, for if the flesh profiteth nothing, the word would not have been made flesh that he might dwell with us.’\*

## XXI.—PROOF FROM THE INSTITUTION.—

## OBJECTIONS EXPLAINED.

What our divine Redeemer promised at Capharnaum, he realized about a year afterwards at Jerusalem, where he went to celebrate the passover.

The institution of the blessed Eucharist is

---

\* S. Augustinus. *In tract, Johan.* xxvii.

recorded with particular precision by four among the inspired writers of the New Testament, whose several recitals of this occurrence we shall carefully notice.

St. Matthew says;—‘and whilst they were at supper, Jesus took bread, and blessed and brake; and gave to his disciples, and said: take ye, and eat: this is my body. And taking the chalice, he gave thanks; and gave to them, saying, drink ye all of this. For this is my blood of the New Testament which shall be shed for many unto remission of sins.’\* St. Mark relates; that ‘whilst they were eating, Jesus took bread; and blessing, broke, and gave to them, and said: take ye, this is my body. And having taken the chalice, giving thanks he gave it to them, and they all drank of it, and he said to them, this is my blood of the New Testament which shall be shed for many.’† St. Luke observes;—‘That taking bread, he gave thanks, and brake, and gave to them, saying, this is my body, which is given for you: do this for a commemoration of me. In like manner the chalice also, after he had supped, saying, this is the chalice of the New Testament in my blood which shall be shed for you.’‡ The words of the Apostle of the Gentiles are no less explicit and declaratory of the real presence than the words of these three Evangelists.

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvi. V. 26-28.* † *St. Mark C. xiv. V. 22-24.*

‡ *St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 19, 20.*

It was thus St. Paul addressed the Corinthians :—  
' For I have received of the Lord, that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus, the same night in which he was betrayed, took bread, and giving thanks, broke, and said : take ye and eat, this is my body which shall be delivered for you : this do for the commemoration of me. In like manner also the chalice, after he had supped, saying : this chalice is the New Testament in my blood ; this do ye as often as you shall drink, for the commemoration of me.'\*

It would have been practically impossible for these inspired writers to have selected clearer or more appropriate language to assure the world that Christ bestows his real flesh and blood to man in the blessed sacrament. For, that these passages are to be interpreted not in a figurative, but in their obvious literal sense, is evident from the following reasons.

1. Though St Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke and St. Paul wrote with different objects in view—at different times—in different places—and to different people, they are unanimous in describing the institution of the sacrament, not only in the self same manner, but almost in precisely identical expressions ; and so remote are they from letting fall one syllable, however trivial, which could, in any way, suggest to their readers, that the Saviour's

---

\* 1 *Cor. C. xi. V. 23-25.*



words might be figuratively understood, that their narratives, on the contrary, preclude any such interpretations. According to them, our blessed Redeemer did not say; this piece of bread is nothing but a figure of my body; but he positively assured his apostles, that what he held in his hand was his very, his real flesh—‘This is my body;’ and that what was contained in the chalice, was his very, his real blood—‘This is my blood;’ that very body too, which was given for us—was nailed to the cross—and died for our redemption—that very blood which was shed for many. Since these passages from scripture assure us that we precisely receive in the sacrament, neither more nor less than what was made to suffer for us on the cross, they compel us, therefore, to arrive at one of these conclusions: either that the true and real body and blood of our Saviour Jesus Christ are substantially present and given in the sacrament; or that it was not his true and real body which was given; not his true and real blood that was shed for us, but the figure and the shadow only of his human nature.

The pious Christian who would shudder at the notion of believing that his Saviour deceived him by a pretended and a figurative death, should not defraud himself of the invaluable treasure of the body and the blood of Christ, nor continue to withhold his assent to a dogma delivered to him by the lips of that same Saviour; nor emulate the incredulous disciples, by crying out; ‘how can

this man give us his flesh to eat? But further investigation into the nature of the Eucharist, and a close review of all the circumstances attendant on its institution, will reveal the error of the Protestant, and establish the truth of the Catholic belief, concerning this stupendous mystery.

2. As the Eucharist is not only a sacrament, but the principal, and most wondrous of their number, it will be difficult to conceive why Almighty God should have chosen to depart from his usual method of employing language to be literally taken whenever he has been pleased to ordain these sacred rites, both in the new and ancient law, in order to make exception with reference to the holy Eucharist, and adopt a figurative mode of speaking in its institution.

Circumcision,\* and the eating of the Paschal Lamb,† together with the many sacrifices and expiations which we read of in Leviticus, which graced the Jewish covenant, and those sacraments which adorn the Christian dispensation, were ordained, or promulgated, in clear and simple language; and after collating the last chapter of the Gospel of St. Matthew, and the last chapter of St. Mark, we shall discover that this observation is particularly applicable in regard to baptism. In St. John,‡ indeed, we see that our divine Redeemer, referring to this sacrament of regeneration, makes

---

\* *Gen. C. xvii.*    † *Exod. C. xii.*    ‡ *St. John, C. iii.*

use of a figurative expression; but he hastens to explain it, by assuring Nicodemus that the regeneration of which he had spoken, was not carnal, but spiritual; since, to enter heaven, man must be born again of water, and the Holy Spirit.

3. That the holy Eucharist should be considered as a covenant, likewise, is demonstrable from the form of its institution. Those words—‘This is my blood of the New Testament,’—employed by our divine Redeemer when he consecrated the wine in the chalice, bear such a manifest relation to those almost identical expressions which Moses used in establishing the ancient alliance,\* that the Apostles must have actually referred to them for an explanation of what the Saviour said; and consequently concluded, that, as Moses spoke of real blood, when he thus addressed the Israelites—‘This is the blood of the covenant which the Lord hath made with you,’—so Christ indicated and gave his real flesh and blood, when he proclaimed of that covenant which he then contracted with his chosen people;—‘This is my blood of the New Testament.’

4. We should particularly bear in mind, that the Apostles only, were present at the last supper; and before them alone, were pronounced the words at its institution. If the Saviour spoke to the Scribes and Pharisees in parables, he furnished an expla-

---

\* *Exod. C. xxiv. V. 8.*

nation of these enigmas afterwards to his Apostles, to whom he declared his mysteries in intelligible language, and instantaneously removed the erroneous interpretation which they, at first, attached to any thing that he might have mentioned. These, too, were the persons whom he assured,—‘To you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God; but to them that are without, all things are done in parables.’\* It was, moreover, after participating in the Pasch, which with desire he had desired to eat with them;† and on that evening, when, having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end;‡ and, consequently, resolved to confer upon mankind, through them, a mark of singular affection. He was also making his last will, and instituting the most awful and august amongst his sacraments. He was realizing the figurative sacrifices of the ancient law, and giving a substance to its shadows. A father, however, who takes but an ordinary interest in his children’s welfare, far from expressing the most important portion of his will in obscure or figurative expressions, studies, on the contrary, to explain himself in clear and intelligible terms. He who loves his friends, will, at the hour of death, address them with unequivocal sincerity, and do nothing to practise a deception on them. He who

---

\* *St. Mark*, C. iv. V. 11.      † *St. Luke*, C. xii. V. 15.

‡ *St. John*, C. xiii. V. 6.

delegates a chosen few to be the messengers of genuine truth to others, will not, in the very last instructions to them, solemnly deliver an erroneous doctrine.

As a proof that by these words,—‘This is my body,’—‘This is my blood,’—Christ intended nothing more than that the sacramental species were to be considered as a figure only of his flesh and blood; the followers of the Church of England instance some metaphorical expressions used by our Redeemer as he preached to the multitude; when he said to them:—‘I am the door,’\*—‘I am the vine,’† &c. But these and similar expressions do not prove, in any way, that those words,—‘This is my body,’ &c. should also be interpreted in a figurative manner.

1. Because, upon the words of institution,—‘This is my body,’—‘This is my blood,’—our divine Redeemer impressed their literal and natural meaning, not merely by the emphatic way in which we may presume he pronounced them, but by circumstances which accompanied their utterance,—by the time, and place in which they were delivered,—and by their announcing the accomplishment of a former solemn promise. Corresponding circumstances are severally wanting in those expressions noticed by the opponents of

---

\* *St. John, C. x.*

† *Ibid. C. xv.*

the real presence. When Christ observed of himself,—‘I am the door,’—he did not lay his hand on any individual door, and, after blessing it, declare,—‘I am this door,’—or,—‘This door is my body. He never took hold of any particular vine, and said,—‘I am this vine,’ or,—‘This is my blood.’

2. Neither a door, nor a vine, was ever known to be employed in the solemnization of a ceremony which was the type of, and bore the clearest reference to, the coming of the Messiah; and for which a separate festival was annually celebrated within the walls of one distinguished city. But when Christ instituted the holy Eucharist, he took one particular portion of bread in his hand, he blessed that particular portion, he brake it, and gave to his disciples, saying, while he held it in his hand,—‘This is my body.’ Such a scene, moreover, took place immediately after he and his disciples had solemnized the Paschal supper, in a house within the precincts of the holy city of Jerusalem.

3. Those who refuse to recognize the doctrine of a real presence as included in those words of Jesus :—‘This is my body,’—‘This is my blood,’ and plead, in their defence, that Christ should be figuratively understood on this occasion, as he is on those others, when he says :—‘I am the door,’ ‘I am the vine,’ must either have taken up such an argument without examination, or employed it with a knowledge of its sophistry. First of all,

Christ expressly manifests his wish to be understood as employing those expressions of the door and the vine in a figurative manner, and supplies upon the spot a key to their interpretation, by remarking:—‘I am the door; by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved; and he shall go in, and go out, and shall find pastures.’\* And again:—‘I am the true vine, and my Father is the husbandman. Every branch in me that beareth not fruit, he will take away; and every one that beareth fruit he will purge it, that it may bring forth more fruit. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, unless it abide in the vine, so neither can you, unless you abide in me.’† When Christ at the last supper uttered those words:—‘This is my body, &c. he expressly manifested, as was just now proved in the observations on the words of Institution,‡ that he wished to be understood as employing such expressions in a literal sense; neither did he then nor on any occasion, either before or afterwards, supply a figurative interpretation of them. It is, therefore, self-evident, that no comparison can be legitimately instituted between them; nor can it be argued, that because those first expressions should be figuratively explained, the latter also must receive a similar interpretation. In the second place, there does not exist the slightest parallel between the metaphors of the

---

\* *St. John*, C. x. V. 9. † *Ibid.* C. xv. V. 1-3. ‡ See p. 216.

door and the vine, and the words of Institution:—  
'This is my body,' &c. though we measure the latter by Protestant principles, which refuse to recognize in them an authority for the real presence.

In order that there should be such a resemblance between these forms of speech, as to warrant the conclusion, that, because one was to be understood figuratively, the other should properly be interpreted in such a manner, it would be necessary to take for granted, that our Saviour, when he said, —'I am the door,' 'I am the vine,'—intended to express, that he was the sign or figure of a door or vine. Such a supposition is obviously absurd. When he calls himself a vine, or a door, it is to indicate that he possesses qualities of which a door, or a vine, present imperfect but sensible ideas. It was far from his intention to signify, either that he was an emblem of such things, or that they were figurative of him. With similar facility, solutions may be severally furnished to those other difficulties which separatists have pretended to extract from Scripture, and have raised against this essential article of Christianity.

Against the argument which Catholics borrow from the words of the Institution, there is another objection which the opponents of the real presence have, with visible complacency, invariably repeated, from the time of Calvin to the present day; and as Horne has been one of the latest to exhibit this objection to public notice, it shall be recited in the



words of that author. 'If the words of Institution had been spoken in English or Latin first, there might perhaps have been some reason for supposing that our Saviour meant to be literally understood.' But they were spoken in Syriac; in which as well as in the Hebrew and Chaldee languages, there is no word which expresses 'to signify,' 'represent,' 'or denote.' Hence it is, that we find the expression, 'it is,' so frequently used in the sacred writings, for 'it represents,' or signifies. It is further worthy of remark, that we have a complete version of the Gospels in the Syriac language, which was executed at the commencement of the second, if not at the close of the first century, and in them it is probable that we have the precise words spoken by our Lord on this occasion. Of the passage, *Matt.* xxvi. 26, 28, the Greek is a verbal translation, nor would any man, even at the present day, speaking in the same language, use, among the people to whom it was vernacular, other terms to express,—'This represents my body,' and,—'This represents my blood.'\*

This passage involves, in reality, two difficulties; for while it asserts, that in the Syrian or Aramean language, there are no words which mean 'to signify,' &c. it maintains, that the auxiliary verb

---

\* *Introduction to the critical study and knowledge of the Sacred Scriptures.* Fifth Edition, Part 2, Cap. v. Sect. I. Tom. ii. p. 590.

‘to be,’ was, in consequence, employed in that dialect, to supply the deficiency, and to indicate a symbol.

Though the observations of Horne, on which he pretends to construct an argument against the real presence, were in reality correct,—still, it could not be made available to overturn that doctrine, the truth of which we are contending for; since a cloud of venerable witnesses determined the meaning of this passage to be precisely what the Catholic Church has affixed to it for more than eighteen centuries. But the assertion of Horne is perfectly erroneous. So far from not possessing any word to express a figure is the Syro-Chaldaic, or Aramæan dialect, that there is not one language known to be enriched with such a multitude of synonymes to signify the very idea. The learned and laborious scrutiny of an able master of the oriental languages, has succeeded in detecting and enumerating no less than forty different words in Syriac, all expressive of our English substantive, ‘figure.’\*

---

\* See the dissertations illustrative of Syriac literature, by the Rev. Dr. Wiseman, who ornaments, while he presides over, the English College at Rome. His work, from which the above observations are borrowed, is intitled: —‘*Horæ Syriacæ, seu commentationes et anecdota, res vel litteras Syriacas spectantia.*’ Auctore Nicolao Wiseman, S. T. D.

We now approach the second difficulty. It was surmised by Horne, that the use of the auxiliary verb 'to be,' in the sense of 'to signify,' prevailed so much amongst the Syrians, as to persuade the belief that the words of Christ, at the institution of the blessed Eucharist, were understood in a figurative manner by the Apostles. Now, it is lucidly demonstrated, that the Syrians not only had more synonymous terms to indicate the word 'figure,' than any other people,—but were accustomed to employ such expressions much more frequently. That with the Syrians, it was not a practice to use the verb 'it is,' instead of 'it represents,'—'it signifies,'—may be easily substantiated, by collating the Syriac with the Latin version of the Scriptures; when it will be ascertained, that in those passages in which the verb 'est' is inserted in the vulgate, and where the perspicuous nature of the context entirely excludes all mistake with regard to its meaning,—still the corresponding words which occur in the Syriac text, are type and symbol.

The assumption, therefore, of Horne, and all his predecessors, is quite erroneous. Instead of the Syriac being such a barren language, as not to possess one word which would express 'figure,' it is most remarkably abundant in terms indicative of this very meaning, and can enumerate no less than forty in its vocabulary.

2. Respecting the custom gratuitously presumed

to have prevailed amongst the Syrians, of employing the auxiliary verb 'to be,' under the same acceptation as the verbs 'to represent,'—'to typify,'—'to signify,' it has been authenticated, that it is of much more frequent occurrence in Latin, and used in Syriac less frequently than in any other language. Far therefore, from weakening the argument which the Catholic deduces from the words of Institution in favour of the real presence, it is fortified by this attempted objection, since it is demonstrated that Christ had more than forty words at his command, to express—a figure, type, or symbol; and that he passed them over, to select one, which, of all others, was the best adapted to declare the real presence, while it precluded every excuse for assigning to his words a figurative signification.

XXII.—THE REAL PRESENCE PROVED FROM ST. PAUL.

That the words of the Redeemer were intended to affix the belief in a real presence of his body in the sacrament, and that the minds of the Apostles received such an impress from them, may be ascertained from various testimonies; but, first of all, from the authoritative declaration of St. Paul, who unequivocally asserts such a doctrine in several portions of the first Epistle which he addressed to the Corinthians. In the tenth chapter he exclaims:—'The chalice of benediction which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? and the bread which we break, is it not

the partaking of the body of the Lord?\*

It was the object of St. Paul to impress as forcibly as possible upon the Corinthians, that as the Israelites, according to the flesh, partook of the altar by eating of the immolated victim,—so the Christian, by receiving the Eucharist, was made a partaker of the body of Jesus Christ, which was sacrificed upon the altar of the Cross. The old was but a shadow of the new Law; hence, what was prefigured by the one, the other realized. As, therefore, the faithful, under the Mosaic dispensation, by a real eating of the victim, partook of the sacrifice that had been offered; so, for the accomplishing of this type in the Christian covenant, we are given to participate in the sacrifice upon the Cross by a real manducation of that precious victim, immolated there for man's redemption. Moreover, that this teacher of the Gentiles wished to signify, not a figurative, but the true and real presence of Jesus in the sacrament, is corroborated by a casual remark which he makes, when he says:—‘We are one bread, and one body, all that partake of one bread.’† Now, it is only in the Eucharist that, strictly speaking, we partake of one bread. There it is, indeed, that we all receive the very same, identical, and heavenly nourishment,—the flesh of Christ, which is perfectly and entirely the same, and one, though distributed to millions; for that

---

\* 1 *Cor. C. x. V. 16.*† *Ibid. C. x. V. 17.*

which the Christian feeds upon in this mysterious banquet, does not, as in other repasts, differ from the bread which is given to another. We all of us become 'one bread and one body' by receiving this great sacrament; since, according to the promises of Christ, all 'that eat his flesh and drink his blood, abide in him, and he in them.'\* The same Apostle remarks:—'For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus, the same night in which he was betrayed, took bread, and giving thanks, broke, and said:—'Take ye and eat; this is my body which shall be delivered for you: this do for the commemoration of me. In like manner also the chalice, after he had supped, saying:—'This chalice is the New Testament in my blood; this do ye, as often as ye shall drink, for the commemoration of me. For as often as you eat this bread and drink the chalice, you shall show the death of the Lord until he come. Therefore, whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink the chalice unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Lord. But let a man prove himself; and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of the chalice. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself, not discerning the body of the Lord.'† Here St. Paul, in the most explicit terms imaginable, asserts

---

\* *St. John, C. vi. V. 57.*

† *1 Cor. C. xi. V. 23-29.*

that the sacramental species, though they have the appearances of bread and wine, are, in reality, the very body which was delivered, and the very blood which flowed for us. He warns the Corinthians, that unto the unworthy, as well as to the worthy communicant, are given the flesh and blood of Jesus. He does not introduce one single word about 'Faith only;' nor does he intimate that the worthy Christian only can receive the body of the Lord: on the contrary, he maintains that the true and real body of Christ is given in the sacrament, to all men, whether infidels or true believers,—whether saintly or sinful. Common sense persuades us that this is the doctrine of St. Paul: for if the unworthy, or such as had not proper or sufficient faith, do not receive the true body and blood of Christ in this sacrament, how is it possible for them to be guilty of the body and blood of Christ? How, too, can they, with justice, be accused of not discerning the body of the Lord, if it be not present? At most, they have received nothing but a simple piece of bread, and drop of wine, in the place of that life-giving nourishment,—the real flesh and blood of Christ, of which they would have, verily and indeed, partaken, had they prepared themselves by the necessary dispositions. But to insist that a man may be guilty of profaning, and of not noticing the body of Christ, when it is not only not present, but as far from danger of profanation, and neglectful slight, as

heaven is from earth,—is about as rational as to maintain, that the servant of a king may be actually guilty of murdering his royal master with his own hand, or of exhibiting an insulting levity and contemptuous disdain, even in the regal presence, though, at the very time, that contumelious subject be ten thousand miles from the person of his sovereign.

XXIII.—TAUGHT BY THE REST OF THE APOSTLES.

The belief in the real presence, insisted on with so much energy by St. Paul, the rest of the Apostles also delivered, along with the other doctrines of the Gospel, to all those nations which they converted by their preaching. This is evidenced by those Liturgies\* that they drew up for the

---

\* The term Liturgy is a compound of two Greek words, —*λειτός*, *public*, and *εργον*, *work*, or *action*,—and was employed to designate the service of the altar.

To veil the sacred mysteries from the gaze of vulgar ignorance and Gentile profanations, or, in Scripture language, not to cast ‘pearls before swine,’ the Discipline of the Secret, which is of Apostolic origin,<sup>a</sup> enacted that the faithful in general should conceal the Creed,<sup>b</sup> the Sacraments,<sup>c</sup> and the holy sacrifice of the Mass,<sup>d</sup> from all knowledge of the uninitiated; and the members of the priesthood in particular, were directed to convey the substance and formularies of the liturgy by word of mouth to one another; and though required to learn and retain them by memory with the most scrupulous precision, were prohibited from committing them to writing. During the



Churches which they severally founded, as well as by the writings of those holy Pastors who imbibed their Christianity during a personal acquaintance with the Apostles, or who more immediately suc-

---

early portion of the fifth age, Nestorius<sup>a</sup> attempted to engraft upon the liturgy his errors concerning the Incarnation. To counteract this artifice, and to preclude the possibility of any future heresiarch propagating his novelties by disseminating them through the prayers and invocations of the public ritual, and for other weighty reasons, the Church resolved to vary from her ancient discipline, and ordained that all the liturgies should be committed to writing. It was then that St. Basil and St. Chrysostom, Popes Gelasius and St. Gregory the Great, St. Ambrose, and other learned and pious prelates of the Greek and Latin Churches, to adapt the public service to the discipline of the period, and the wants of such portions of the fold of Christ as were more immediately entrusted to their spiritual solicitude, in some passages retrenched, in others augmented, the prayers and ceremonies of the liturgies; and without adulterating in the slightest manner the substance or the doctrine of those Apostolic monuments, gave them a new, and in many instances a more appropriate form. Hence it was that those liturgies, which, up to the period of their renovation, had been denominated by the names of those Apostles who originally framed them, exchanged their ancient, for a modern appellation, and were called after those venerable prelates by whom they had been remodelled.

<sup>a</sup> For the proofs of this, see a work entitled—' *De Disciplina Arcani*,' per *Emanuelem a Schelstrate*, Romae 1685, the first, as well as the most able treatise which has hitherto been published on the subject.—*Ibid.* p. 15.—<sup>c</sup> *Ibid.* p. 18, et 106.—<sup>d</sup> *Ibid.* p. 20, et passim.—<sup>e</sup> *Leont. Bysant. contra Nest. et Eutych.*

ceeded them in the office of public instruction. As each liturgy contains the common form of prayer, and ceremonial order of public worship of that individual Church in which it was observed, it must exhibit a clear and well authenticated profession of the faith delivered by the Clergy, and believed by the people constituting that particular portion of the flock of Christ, from the earliest period in which such a form of ritual was introduced.

XXIV.—ALL THE ANCIENT LITURGIES ATTEST THE  
REAL PRESENCE.

Now, it is a most luminous fact, which should be incessantly kept in view throughout the progress of this investigation, that, on collecting all the several liturgies, which had for so many hundred years a separate existence in those various parts of Christendom kept so far asunder by natural as well as adventitious impediments; and on comparing these forms of prayer together, not only a great resemblance of parts, and a similarity in ceremonies, but a perfect and unvarying accordance with regard to doctrine, especially on the real presence, is discoverable through all of them without one solitary exception. This will be evidenced by a reference to those venerable documents.\*

---

\* The Abbé Renaudot made public, in the year 1716, a numerous collection of Oriental liturgies, accompanied

From the fact of this perfect accordance between all the liturgies which have existed in the Christian world, from the promulgation of the Gospel to the sixteenth century, must result one of these two consequences ; either the Catholic dogma is a genuine and essential article of the faith

---

with notes, and a useful introduction ; the whole comprising 2 vols. 4to. Anterior to the learned Frenchman's labours in studying the antiquities of the Eastern Church, that pious and all-accomplished scholar Cardinal Thomasius had bestowed a similar attention on the several liturgies belonging to the West ; and printed, in 1680, the ancient Sacramentaries of the Church of Rome, in that metropolis of Christianity. It was from this work of the Roman Cardinal, that Dom Mabillon extracted in 1685 the Gallican liturgy, which he had attentively collated with a manuscript of the sixth century, and with two other very ancient manuscripts. In 1640, Dom Menard, well known by his pursuits in ecclesiastical antiquities, published the Sacramentary of St. Gregory,\* to which he attached some luminous annotations. The Mozarabic<sup>t</sup> Missal had already been printed, through the pious care of Cardinal Ximenes, in 1500. Père le Brun collected all those liturgies, to which he added some others, which his precursors in this curious investigation had not been able to procure ; he compared them all with one another, and with those modern ones drawn up by Protestants ; so that at present nothing is wanting to assist the scholar to decide upon these venerable and most ancient monuments of genuine Christianity.

In proof of the Catholic doctrine of the Real Presence, Transubstantiation, and the holy sacrifice of the Mass,

of Jesus Christ, since it has been handed down as such by the Apostles,—universally believed by the nations, and the people whom they taught,—guarded and venerated on that account with the most religious jealousy by their more immediate successors, as well as by all their legitimate descendants in the sacred ministry to the present period :—or the Scriptures have deceived us ; the Church, the pillar and the ground of truth, has been shaken by error, and Christ has violated his last, most solemn promise ; for, instead of being with the teachers of his Gospel ‘all days even to the consummation of the world,’\* instead of sending the ‘spirit of truth to abide with them † and teach them all truth,’‡ he has, for more than eighteen hundred years, permitted them to preach er-

---

copious extracts have been made, and translated into English from these liturgies, by the Right Rev. Dr. Poynter, in his invaluable work intituled ‘Christianity,’ for some passages of which the reader is referred to Appendix I.

\* St. Gregory the Great, whose charitable zeal, through the ministry of St. Austin and his associates, converted England from Saxon Paganism to Christianity, was elected Pope in the year 590. A Sacramentary was anciently the volume which contained the prayers and ceremonies of the Liturgy, or Mass, and of the administration of the Sacraments. It was, at the same time, a ritual, and a Missal. In the Greek Church it is called the Euchology.

† Such was the denomination given to those Christians in Spain, who though they lived intermingled with their Moorish conquerors, preserved their faith from contamination, and, by an annual donative, purchased the free exercise of it from their masters, who come from Arabia,—in the language of which country, such as were not descendants of Arabians, but dwelt incorporated with that nation, were designated *Most-Arabics*, a term that by Spanish enunciation has been converted into *Mozarabics*.

\* *Matt. C. xxviii. V. 20* † *St. John C. xiv. V. 17.* ‡ *Ib. C. xvi. V. 13.*

roneous doctrine, and to maintain unceasingly and every where, that the true, the very flesh and blood of Christ, are present, and received in the blessed Eucharist.\* But every sincere believer will acknowledge it to be impossible that the Scriptures could be wrong,—that truth itself could speak a falsehood, or that Christ should break his promise; and, therefore his Church has invariably taught those doctrines only, which were dictated to her by the Holy Ghost, and has, consequently, preserved the genuine truth of Christ himself, by teaching his real presence in the Eucharist. Hence, as each true follower of Jesus is commanded to hear the Church, if we be such, we shall unhesitatingly declare an unreserved assent to such a tenet; or, otherwise, incur the punishment denounced against the contumacious, and be likened to the heathen, and to the publican,†—and consider ourselves guilty, not only of despising the Church, but guilty of despising God, who sent

---

\* So forcibly did this argument strike upon the learned Protestant Grotius, that he observes:—‘I find in all the Liturgies,—Greek, Latin, Arabic, Syriac, and others, prayers to God, that he would consecrate, by his Holy Spirit, the gifts offered, and make them the Body and the Blood of his Son. I was right, therefore, in saying, that a custom, so ancient and universal, that it must be considered to have come down from the primitive times, ought not to have been changed.’—*Votum pro Pace*.

† *Matt. C. xviii. V. 17.*

down from heaven his well beloved Son, not merely to preach the truth, but to establish an infallible tribunal for its perpetual preservation,—to build a sacred ark, and which the Holy Spirit should guard and overshadow with his wings, that beam with heavenly effulgence, and shed unerring light upon the sacred record, when the body of its ministers approach to read it.

---

#### SECTION IV.

---

##### TRANSUBSTANTIATION.

FROM briefly noticing these proofs of the real presence, we naturally descend to another essential dogma included in the Eucharist, namely, Transubstantiation.

##### XXV.—WHAT IS MEANT BY THE TERM.

Such a term the Church employs to express that by the words of consecration, the whole substance of the bread, is changed into the Body; and the whole substance of the wine, into the Blood of Jesus Christ.

The truth of such a doctrine is firmly established; first by scripture; and secondly, by tradition.

## XXVI.—TRANSUBSTANTIATION PROVED FROM SCRIPTURE.

In the sixth chapter of St. John, as we before remarked, our divine Redeemer promises to give his followers, not an image, nor a figure of his body, but that very body itself—‘his flesh to be their meat indeed, and his blood to be their drink indeed’\*—we are perfectly unable to discover how Jesus ever realized a promise tendered in such a solemn manner; except we admit that, at the institution of the Eucharist, he himself converted, or, to use the language of the Church, transubstantiated bread and wine into his body and blood; and transmitted the exercise of this stupendous power to his apostles and their consecrated successors. A reference to the Last Supper establishes the doctrine of Transubstantiation on an immovable basis. ‘Jesus took bread; and blessing, broke, and gave to them, and said: take ye, this is my body.’† &c. Our blessed Redeemer neither said—‘this is a figure of my body—this chalice represents my blood;’ nor did he observe; ‘here is my body—here is my blood,’ nor ‘along with this bread is my body—along with this wine is my blood.’—No; but he positively asserted in the clearest way imaginable—‘this is my body—this is my blood;’ or in other language, ‘this which you now perceive me holding in my hands, and which was lately bread, is now my very body; not my figurative,

---

\* *St. John, C. vi. V. 56.*

† *St. Mark, C. xiv. 22, &c.*

but real body ; that very same—that true—identical—substantial flesh of mine, to be ere long nailed to a cross for your redemption : this is my true, my real blood, which shall be shed for many.' That which is the body of Christ, cannot possibly be bread ; that which is the blood of Christ cannot possibly be wine ; therefore, since we are taught by Christ himself in terms most positive, that in the sacrament we receive his body and his blood ; since we are cautioned by St. Paul to approach the holy table in a worthy manner, lest we 'eat and drink judgment\* to ourselves not discerning the body of the Lord ;' since in fine, the immediate successors of the apostles, and the universal Church have been unanimous and urgent, now more than eighteen centuries, in reiterating such an admonition ; we are certain that bread and wine no longer exist there after consecration, and although we may perceive the appearances, the substance of the sacramental elements is changed ; and what was bread and wine, is now transubstantiated into the body and blood of Jesus.

## XXVII.—PROOF FROM ST. CYRIL.

The language held by St. Cyril of Jerusalem, almost fifteen centuries ago,† while unfolding to

---

\* 1 Cor. C. xi. V. 22.

† In a work lately published, (1830) intituled—*A concise View of the succession of Sacred Literature*,—its author,



the Catechumens, who were about to receive, for the first time, the blessed Eucharist, explains the nature of the sacrament so well, and furnishes such a splendid example of the uniformity between the present and ancient belief of Catholics upon this tenet, that it would be culpable to pass it by without notice. 'As then,' observes the Father, 'Jesus Christ, speaking of the bread, declared and said, 'this is my body,' who shall ever dare to call his word into question? And, as speaking of the wine, he positively assured us and said, 'this is my blood,' who shall doubt it, and say, that is not his

---

Dr. Adam Clarke, in the analysis of the first Apology for the Christians, addressed by Justin Martyr, to the Roman Emperors, Titus, Ælius, Hadrian, &c. passes at page 97, Vol. I. the following remark:—'He (Justin Martyr, A. D. 140.) thus speaks of the Eucharist, p. 98—*οὐ γὰρ ὡς κοινὸν ἄρτον οὐδὲ κοινὸν ποτὶ ταῦτα λαμβανόμεν, ἀλλ' ὅν τῳ τρόπῳ διαλογὸν Θεοῦ σαρκοποιήθεις Ἰησοῦς*, *in some measure* asserting the transformation of the elements.'—Here we have a Protestant divine, whose hostility to the Catholic Faith is discernible in several parts of his writings, reluctantly acknowledging that the doctrine of Transubstantiation was, in the year 140, an article of Christianity. After this, the sensible Protestant must admit that his modern Church is wrong in rejecting, while the Catholic Church so venerable for her antiquity, is right in retaining the doctrine of Transubstantiation, which, by the admission of even Protestant divines, was industriously taught and pertinaciously adhered to, by those primitive believers who sealed their faith with martyrdom.

blood? Once, in Cana of Galilee, he changed water into wine by his will alone; and shall we think it less worthy of credit, that he changed wine into his blood? Invited to an earthly marriage, he wrought this miracle; and shall we hesitate to confess that he has given to his children his body to eat, and his blood to drink? Wherefore with all confidence let us take the body and blood of Christ, for under the type or figure of bread, his body is given to thee, and under the figure of wine, his blood is given; that so being made partakers of the body and blood of Christ, you may become one body and one blood with him.....wherefore, I conjure you, my brethren, not to consider them any more as common bread and wine, since they are the body and blood of Jesus Christ; according to his words; and although your sense might suggest that to you, let faith confirm you. Judge not of the thing by your taste, but by faith assure yourself without the least doubt, that you are honoured with the body and blood of Christ. This knowing, and of this being assured, that what appears to you bread, is not bread but the body of Christ, although the taste judge it to be bread; and that the wine which you see, and which has the taste of wine, is not wine but the blood of Christ.\* An innumerable host of Greek Fathers belonging to the earliest ages, and of writers who have flourished at

---

\* *Cat. Mystag.* IV. pp. 320, 321.

R

more remote periods, might, if it were requisite, be drawn out in long array to combat for the dogma of Transubstantiation, which is, and has at all times been most strenuously maintained throughout the eastern as well as western parts of Christendom.\*

XXVIII.—ILLUSTRATED BY A PRACTICE OF THE MODERN GREEK CHURCH.

That the modern Greeks do not differ from their more orthodox and ancient countrymen in the belief of such a doctrine, is attested by a practice

---

\* That our Anglo-Saxon ancestors believed in the doctrines of the Real Presence and Transubstantiation, precisely as they are taught, at this moment, by the whole Catholic Church, has been lucidly demonstrated by the learned historian of England, Dr. Lingard, in his elegant work, intituled; *the Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church*, in which that writer observes;—‘ To them, (the Anglo-Saxons) the modern doctrine, that the Eucharist is the mere manducation of the material elements, in commemoration of the Passion of the Messiah, was entirely unknown. They had been taught to despise the doubtful testimony of the senses, and to listen to the more certain assurance of the inspired writings; according to their belief, the bread and wine, after consecration, had ceased to be what their external appearance suggested; they were become, by an invisible operation, the victim of redemption, the true body and blood of Christ.’ P. 196. Dr. Lingard, in a note, assembles a host of Anglo-Saxon witnesses, who bear testimony to his assertion.

which every where prevails amongst them at this day, of representing by a picture or mosaic, on the ceiling of the apsis or recess which canopies their altar, the Eucharistic species, indicated not by a figure of a piece of bread, but of a little infant cradled, as it were, within the paten or sacramental plate, by the side of which, is placed a chalice, which contains the blood,\* as may be observed in the accompanying engraving on wood.



The painting which usually ornaments the ceiling over the altar in Greek churches.

---

\* Dionysius of Constantinople caused a similar device to be painted at the beginning of his attestation, which he sent, in the year 1672, to the king of France; and Dositheus, in the synod of Jerusalem, glances at this national custom in the following unequivocal expressions. 'It is astonishing that the heretics have not observed how Jesus Christ is represented on the hemicycle of the sanctuary under the likeness of an infant in the sacred disk; for they might

R 2

## OBJECTIONS ANSWERED.

No arguments, whether erroneously imagined to be deducible from scripture, or alleged by human, consequently fallacious reason, however specious they may at first appear, if leisurely and dispassionately examined, will be found available to neutralize the words of Christ, to invalidate the testimony of the Apostle of the Gentiles, or to annul the doctrinal and authoritative decision of the universal Church.

## XXIX.—FROM ST. PAUL.

Some passages have been noticed in the Epistles of St. Paul, in which that inspired writer is unwarrantably presumed to contradict the dogma of Transubstantiation, merely because he happens to have asked this question ;—‘ The bread which we break, is it not the partaking of the body of the Lord ?\* and to have said a little later in the same Epistle ;—‘ For as often as you shall eat this bread, and drink this chalice, you shall show the

---

perceive that as the Orientals represent within the disk neither an emblem, nor grace, nor any thing but Jesus Christ himself; they consequently believe that the Eucharistic bread is nothing else, and that it is made to be substantially the body itself of Jesus Christ.’<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> See LE BRUN, *Cérémonies de la Messe*, tome II, p. 463, where a sketch is given of the painting, similar to ours.

\* 1 Cor. C. x. V. 16.

death of the Lord until he come.\* It is true that St. Paul denominates the Eucharistic species by the term bread ; but what does he intend to indicate by such an appellation ? Is it ordinary bread ? No, he makes a particular distinction between common bread and that of which he is speaking. For he does not say—‘ the bread which any one breaks,’ &c.—or—‘ as often as ye shall eat bread,’ but he lays a heavy stress upon his words : he carefully observes a marked distinction by saying, ‘ the bread which *we* break,’ &c.—‘ As often as you shall eat *this* bread,’ &c.—And at the closing of each sentence, he lets us know what constitutes the difference between the Eucharistic, and unblessed ordinary bread. He teaches us that the chalice which he blesses is the ‘ communion of the blood of Christ ;’ not a figure, but the blood, the very blood itself of Christ ; and the bread which he breaks is the ‘ partaking of the body of the Lord ;’ not an eating of the emblem, but of the very substance of the real flesh of Jesus. As a warning of those serious consequences that will follow from a profanation of this tremendous, but celestial banquet ; the Apostle thus impressively exhorts us :—‘ Therefore whosoever† shall eat this bread‡ or

---

\* 1 *Cor. C.* xi. *V.* 26.

† Not only the man with faith—the guiltless true believer—but any man who has not faith—every one in general, ‘ whosoever.’

‡ The Protestant translators of the Church of England

drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Lord.' But let a man prove himself; and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of the chalice. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh judgment to himself, not discerning the body of the Lord.\* In all these passages, St. Paul most positively says, that the real body and blood of Christ are present in the Eucharist, and the unworthy and the worthy, and indeed every one without exception, eat and drink of them, whenever they receive the sacrament. But real blood cannot be at the same time real wine: real flesh cannot be at the same time real bread; therefore, not to make St. Paul contradict his own words, we must understand him to say, that, what was bread, and what was wine, are by the blessing uttered over them, changed, that is, transubstantiated into the body and the blood of Christ: and while indeed the accidents of bread and wine still remain

---

version of the Testament, have been guilty of corrupting the original Greek text in this passage of St. Paul, who does not say; 'and drink,' but 'or drink'—*ἢ πίνῃ*.—This mis-translation was, no doubt designedly made, to favour the erroneous doctrine that communion under both kinds is requisite. Christ however expressly taught the very contrary, when he declared that those who worthily received under one kind only, should have eternal happiness. 'He that eateth this bread shall live for ever.' (*St. John C. vi. V. 59.*)

\* 1 *Cor. C. xi. V. 27, 28.*

even after the benediction, so they outwardly seem to be unchanged, and therefore may without any impropriety, be called bread and wine, because they appear to the senses to be such; yet since their substances are changed, they are properly called what they inwardly and really are converted into, the body and the blood of Jesus Christ.

In scripture language, it not unfrequently happens that things which have been changed, or transubstantiated, even after transformation, still retain the name of that material which originally constituted them. ‘Aaron took the rod before Pharaoh and his servants, and it was turned into a serpent, and Aaron’s rod devoured the magicians’ rods.’\* Though Aaron’s rod was transubstantiated into a serpent, still it was called a rod. ‘Moses and Aaron did as the Lord commanded; and lifting up the rod, he struck the water of the river before Pharaoh and his servants, and it was turned into blood.....and the Egyptians could not drink of the water.’† Here again, although the water had been converted into blood, its stream is however denominated water. After Christ had wrought the change of water into wine, still the Evangelist does not drop the first appellation of the liquor while noticing the observations of the chief steward, ‘who had tasted the water made wine,‡ and knew

---

\* *Exod. C. vii. V. 10-12.*      † *Exod. C. vii. V. 20, 21.*

‡ *St. John C. ii. V. 9.*



not whence it was, but the waiters knew who had drawn the water.' When John sent his disciples to Christ, saying, 'art thou he that art to come? Jesus making answer, said to them, go relate to John what you have heard and seen. The blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead rise again.\* It is self evident that the man who sees, is assuredly not blind; he ceases to be deaf who has the faculty of hearing; what therefore does our Saviour wish to signify? That those who had been blind, now see; that those who had been lame, now walk; that those who had been lepers, are now cleansed; that those who formerly were deaf, now hear; that those who had been dead, now live again. These examples scattered through the holy scriptures, would have warranted St. Paul to have severally observed of them: this rod is a serpent; this water is blood; this water is wine; the dumb man speaks; the deaf one hears; the dead Lazarus lives. Had then the Apostle of the Gentiles made use of similar expressions in reference to those miraculous events, his auditors would not have argued that his authority might thence be collected to deny such wonders; on the contrary, they would have recognized in these words, his recorded declaration in their favour. While therefore we maintain that with the greatest propriety of scripture language, St. Paul

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xi. V. 2-5.*

might, and did indeed observe, that the bread which he broke was the body of Christ : we at the same time contend that such a form of speech, instead of weakening, confirms, in the most conspicuous manner, the tenet of transubstantiation : since at the same time we are assured that Christ's real body is in the sacrament, the material is noticed from which it is transformed ; and the term bread is employed to notify, not that it is real bread, but, that it is formed originally from such a substance.

**XXX.—OBJECTION OF THE TERM TRANSUBSTANTIATION.**

To the person who objects that the word Transubstantiation is not to be discovered in any part of Scripture, it may be replied, that the terms Trinity and Incarnation cannot be found there either : and consequently, if a doctrine must of necessity be looked upon as anti-scriptural, because the titles which ecclesiastical writers have appropriated to its designation, cannot be traced back to the sacred pages,—then the Protestant of the Church of England must yield to the reasoning of the Socinian and the Anti-Trinitarian, and reject, along with them, the doctrine of the Trinity and Incarnation : for neither of these words is read in any passage of the Testament or Bible. The intelligent and thinking Protestant would immediately reply to those who assailed these stupendous doctrines by such an argument, that if the names

be not discernible, at least the doctrines designated by those expressions, 'Trinity' and 'Incarnation,' are expressly taught in Scripture, and are, therefore, to be most tenaciously maintained. Let him, henceforth, take his own solution for a similar difficulty which he raises against the Catholic dogma of Transubstantiation.\*

To a dogma established from Scripture, it is folly, not to say presumption, to oppose arguments deduced from the senses. That the doctrine of the Eucharist is founded on the word of God, has been demonstrated. To him, therefore, who refuses to yield acquiescence because his human reason can-

---

\* That terms of identical meaning have been invariably employed throughout the East and West, is attested by an author whose authority, as he was not a Catholic, will meet with more respect from our opponents. Samuel Parker, the Protestant Bishop of Oxford, thus observes:— 'In the first place, then, it is evident to all men that are but ordinarily conversant in ecclesiastical learning, that the ancient Fathers, from age to age asserted the real and substantial presence, in very high and expressive terms. The Greeks styled it *Metabole*, *Metarrhuthinisis*, *Metaskenasmos*, *Metapoiesis*, *Metastoiceiosis*; and the Latins agreeable with the Greeks,—*Conversion*, *Transmutation*, *Transformation*, *Transfiguration*, *Transelementation*, and at length,—*Transubstantiation*, by all which they expressed nothing more nor less, than the real and substantial presence in the Eucharist.'—*Bishop Parker's reasons for abrogating the Test*, p. 13. Oct. 30, Anno 1678. Printed 1688.

not grasp the mystery, we answer in the words of a minister of the established Church. 'While arguing upon this subject, some persons, I regret to say, have been far too copious in the use of these unseemly terms,—absurdity, and impossibility. To such language, the least objection is its reprehensible want of good manners. A much more serious objection is the tone of lofty presumptuousness which pervades it, and which is wholly unbecoming a creature of very narrow faculties. Certainly God will do nothing absurd, and can do nothing impossible. But it does not therefore exactly follow that our view of things should be always perfectly correct, and wholly free from misapprehension. Contradictions we may easily fancy, where, in truth, there are none. Hence, before we venture to pronounce any particular doctrine to be a contradiction, we must be sure that we perfectly understand the nature of the matter propounded in that doctrine; for, otherwise, the contradiction may not be in the matter itself, but in our mode of conceiving it. In regard to myself, as my conscientiously finite intellect claims not to be an universal measure of congruities and possibilities, I deem it both more wise and more decorous, to refrain from assailing the doctrine of Transubstantiation on the ground of its alleged absurdity and impossibility. By such a mode of attack, we in reality quit the true field of rational and satisfactory argument. The doctrine of Tran-

substantiation, like the doctrine of the Trinity, is a question, not of abstract reasoning, but of pure evidence. We believe the revelation of God to be essential unerring truth. Our business, therefore, most assuredly is, not to discuss the absurdity and the imagined contradictoriness of Transubstantiation, but to enquire, according to the best means we possess, whether it be indeed a doctrine of Holy Scripture. If sufficient evidence shall appear to be the case, we may be sure that the doctrine is neither absurd nor contradictory. Receiving the Scripture as the infallible word of God, and prepared, with entire prostration of mind, to admit his declarations, I shall ever contend that the doctrine of Transubstantiation, like the doctrine of the Trinity, is a question of pure evidence.\*

XXXI.—RECAPITULATION.

From the creation of the human race up to the present moment, sacrifice has always constituted the essential, as well as the most conspicuous part of man's external homage to the Godhead. The first society of religionists who ventured to mutilate the worship of the Deity, by the abstraction of sacrifice, the most ancient and the most essential of its rites, were the Protestants.

In the law of nature, and under the Mosaic dispensation, existed a variety of sacrifices. In the

---

\* *Faber's Difficulties of Romanism.*

gospel-covenant there is but a single sacrifice,—but of a two-fold nature,—of which the bloody one is that by which Christ was offered up to his Eternal Father, once, upon the altar of the Cross : the other is unbloody, and is that by which the self same Jesus is offered up daily upon our altars, but under the appearances of bread and wine,—partly to commemorate his bloody sacrifice, partly for other purposes.

The unbloody sacrifice, denominated the Mass, is the same in essence, as that bloody sacrifice of Calvary, and while in many respects it coincides with, in some it differs from it. It agrees with it in three different ways. 1. In the object immolated ; for in both it is Jesus Christ, the Lamb of God, that is presented by way of victim. 2. In the chief offerer ; for Christ, in both instances, stands the victim, is in both the principal, or great high-priest. 3. In the end ; for as once upon the Cross, so now daily on our altars, Christ is offered for the sins of men.

The ways in which the unbloody sacrifice, called the Mass, differs from the bloody sacrifice at Jerusalem, are not many. On the Cross our Saviour was offered up in his human form, which was discernible to the senses of the multitude around him : upon the altar, he is offered with his body veiled under the appearances of bread and wine, and in the manner of a sacrament. Two things distinct in themselves, though intimately connected

with one another, are discernible in this stupendous mystery, The first is the consecration, by the efficacy of which the bread and wine are transubstantiated into the body and blood of Jesus; the second is the manducation, by which we are made partakers in this great sacrifice. In the consecration, the body and the blood are mystically separated, because Jesus Christ has separately pronounced:—‘ This is my body,’—‘ This is my blood’—These words exhibit a forcible and efficacious representation of the violent death which our Saviour underwent for our redemption.

Thus the word made flesh reposes on our altars; and no one will refuse to acknowledge that the presence of Jesus Christ is a species of intercession all-powerful with God in favour of the human race, since the Apostle assures us that Jesus Christ appears in the presence of God for us;\* and as Bossuet appropriately remarks:—‘ We believe that Jesus Christ, present upon the altar, in this figure of his death intercedes for us, and represents continually to his Father, the death which he suffered for the Church.’ In this same sense we answer that Christ offers himself for us in the Eucharist.

Such is the Christians’ sacrifice, which so widely differs from all those peculiar to the law of nature, or celebrated in the Jewish Temple. It is a spiritual sacrifice, where the victim, though identi-

---

\* *Heb. C. ix. V. 24.*

cally present, still is not observable, excepting to the eye of faith only ; where the sword of the sacrificer is the word of Christ, pronounced by his ministering priest, and which works the mystic separation of the body from the blood ; where this blood is not poured out nor spilled, except in mystery,—and where there is no death, except by representation. Still, it is a sacrifice, in which Jesus Christ is verily contained, and immolated to God, under this figure of death,—a sacrifice continually commemorating that once offered on the Cross. The Eucharistic sacrifice abstracts nothing from the sacrifice at Calvary : on the contrary, it exists only by its connexion with that bloody sacrifice, and receives all its virtue and all its efficacy from it. Such is the Catholic's doctrine on the sacrifice of the Mass.

---





# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### SECTION I.

#### HISTORY OF THE MASS.

1. Christ said the first Mass.—2. Christ directed the Apostles to celebrate Mass.—3. The Apostles said Mass.—4. A ceremonial instituted by the Apostles for offering up Mass.—5. Attested by St. John.—6. The remarks of some Protestants noticed.—7. The Liturgy indicated by St. Ignatius M.—8. Noticed by Pliny.—9. Described by St. Justin.
- 

### SECTION II.

#### LAY COMMUNION.

10. Belief of the Church on Lay Communion.—11. Communion under one kind, of Apostolic institution.—12. When and why generally adopted by the Latin Church.—13. Agreeable to Scripture.—14. Objection from Scripture answered.—15. Unleavened bread used at the last supper.—16. Unleavened bread used by the Latin Church ; by the Maronites, and Armenians.—17. The Sacrament hinted at in the Apocalypse.—18. The circular form of the Host very ancient.



## PART THE SECOND.

---

### CHAPTER II.

#### HISTORY OF THE MASS

AND

#### LAY COMMUNION.

---

##### SECTION I.

##### HISTORY OF THE MASS.

##### 1.—CHRIST SAID THE FIRST MASS.

OUR divine Redeemer was the first to offer up that holy sacrifice, since called the Mass. This he did, when, after having celebrated the Jewish Passover, he instituted the holy Eucharist. Then it was, that our Lord took bread and wine, and blessed them, and made them his body and his blood.\* He deposited the holy victim, which expiates the sins of man, upon the sacred table; and he placed it there in the form of a victim, because

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvi. V. 26.*

he produced a mystic separation of it by rendering his body present under the species of bread, and his blood, under the species of wine. Thus was the table hallowed, and thence became an altar, upon which our Lord exhibited to his Father's view, the victim of our reconciliation. Afterwards he took it up from the altar, and gave it to his disciples to partake of, accompanying the precious treasure with an imperative injunction, which, at the same time that it commanded them to do as he had done, conferred upon them the sacerdotal dignity, required for the due discharge of such an ordinance. At the closing of this stupendous ceremony, they chanted their thanksgivings in a holy canticle.\* Such are the facts we find registered in the Gospel-record, of the institution of the blessed Eucharist.†

## II.—CHRIST DIRECTED THE APOSTLES TO CELEBRATE MASS.

The words of Jesus were too distinct and explicit not to be intelligible: hence, the Apostles knew, that by this expression,—‘Do this for a commemoration of me,’—our Saviour meant to be thus understood:—‘As I took bread, and brake, and gave to you, saying: this is my body: and really and substantially made it, by my heavenly power, what I said it was,—my body, which is given for

---

\* *St. Matt. C.xxvi.* † *Ibid. St. Mark, C.xiv. St. Luke, C.xxii.*

you;\*—and, as I, having taken the chalice, giving thanks, gave to you, saying: this is my blood:—and really, substantially made it what I then declared it was,—my blood, which shall be shed for many;†—and thus offered to my heavenly Father, in a mystic and unbloody manner, that same victim, my own same body and blood, which is to be immolated on the Cross in a visible and bloody manner,—so do you take bread, and blessing it, make it my body; and taking wine, bless it, and make it my blood; and thus, continually present to heaven, in an unbloody manner, not a different, but the self same sacrifice, which shall be offered up in a bloody manner, once, upon the Cross:—‘Do this for a commemoration of me,‡ for as often as you shall eat this bread, and drink the chalice, you shall show the death of the Lord until he come.’§

### III.—THE APOSTLES SAID MASS.

In order to obey the precept, and commemorate the death of their omnipotent and heavenly preceptor, we observe the Apostles most exact in exercising that marvellous prerogative, with which he had invested them, of doing what he had himself accomplished after supper in their presence, and which he bestowed upon them when he said:

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 19.*

† *St. Mark, C. xiv. V. 24.*

‡ *St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 19.*

§ *1 Cor. C. xi. V. 26.*

‘Do this for a commemoration of me.’\* In proof of this, we have only to consult the Scripture, and interrogate antiquity. St. Luke informs us, in his Acts of the Apostles, that as they were ministering, or, to use the word employed by Erasmus in his version of this passage,—‘as they were sacrificing to the Lord, the Holy Ghost said to them, separate me Saul and Barnabas.’† The same sacrifice which the Evangelist distinguishes by the term ‘ministration,’ we Catholics, at the present day, call the ‘Mass.’ St. Luke also informs us how the earliest converts to the Gospel were persevering in the doctrine of the Apostles, and in the commemoration of the breaking of bread, and in prayers,‡ or, according to the language of that period, the first believers were most careful to attend at the Eucharistic sacrifice or Mass: for the Mass is the celebration of the sacred mysteries, accompanied by a series of sublime instructions and solemn prayers, which precede, accompany, and follow its performance, indicated by this passage of the Acts. A remarkable accordance may be discerned between the practice of Catholics at the Apostolic period, and that observed by Catholics of the present time. They were, like ourselves, not only most careful to hear Mass upon the Lord’s day, but were accustomed to make use of lights to afford more solemnity to its celebration; and studied

---

\* *St. Luke*, C. xxii. V. 19. † *Acts*, C. xiii. V. 2. ‡ *Ib.* C. ii. V. 42.

to procure the benefit of verbal instruction in a sermon delivered by their pastors; since we read that 'on the first day of the week, when they were assembled to break bread, Paul discoursed with them.....and there were a great number of lamps in the upper chamber, where they were assembled.'\*

IV.—A CEREMONIAL INSTITUTED BY THE APOSTLES FOR OFFERING UP MASS.

In the absence of history, both religion and decorum would prohibit us from supposing, even for an instant, that the Apostles did not observe any certain rites in offering up the Eucharistic sacrifice: undoubtedly they were unanimous in agreeing with St. Paul, who thus admonishes the Corinthians:—'Let all things be done decently, and in order.'† It is not at all surprising, therefore, that we find an animated picture sketched by one of the Apostles, and which, we may presume, either represents the Liturgy as it was then celebrated, or became the model according to which it was afterwards arranged.

V.—ATTESTED BY ST. JOHN.

'I was in spirit,' says St. John, in his book of the Apocalypse, 'on the Lord's day, and I saw

---

\* *Acts, C. xx. V. 7, 8.* The numerous lamps, particularly noticed here, were, no doubt, employed to give splendour to the sacred institution.

† *1 Cor. C. xiv. V. 40.*



seven golden candlesticks, and in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks, I saw one,—clothed with a garment down to the feet, and girt about with a golden girdle,\* and behold, there was a throne set in heaven, and upon the throne one sitting.....and round about the throne were four and twenty ancients sitting, clothed in white garments:† and I saw, on the right hand of him that sat on the throne, a book written within and without..... and in the midst of the throne.....a Lamb standing as it were slain.....and the four and twenty ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and they sang a new canticle.....and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne.....saying with a loud voice: The Lamb that was slain is worthy to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and benediction.‡ I saw under the altar, the souls of them that were slain for the word of God.....and they cried with a loud voice, saying: How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?§ And another angel came, and stood before the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given to him much incense, that he should offer up of the prayers of all saints, upon the golden altar, which is before the throne of God; and the smoke

---

\* *Apoc. C. i. V. 10, 12, 13.*

† *Ibid. C. iv. V. 2, 4.*

‡ *Ibid. C. v. V. 1, 6, 8, 9, 11, 12.*

§ *Ibid. C. vi. V. 9, 10.*

of the incense of the prayers of the saints ascended up before God.\* Such is the recital furnished to us by St. John of the vision with which he had been favoured precisely on the Lord's day, or first day of the week, on which it was the practice of the faithful to meet together for the celebration of the holy mysteries, or Mass.† The Apostle gives us the description of an assembly, over which presides a venerable pontiff, seated on a throne, and encircled by four and twenty ancients, or priests. The white robe, the garment reaching to the feet, together with the golden girdle, are enumerated amongst the sacerdotal vesture: the harps, the canticles, and all the music of the angels' choir are noticed; and of the instruments employed in sacrifice, are specifically mentioned, an altar, golden candlesticks, a golden censer, with its fire and smoking incense, and the sealed book. There is present a Lamb, standing as it were slain, and, by consequence, a victim, to whom divine honours and supreme adoration are exhibited by every creature 'which is in heaven and on the earth.'‡ It is, therefore, a sacrifice at which Christ is present; being, at the same time, both high priest and immolated victim. Under the altar are the sainted martyrs, who thence address their supplications to God; and before it stands an angel offering up

---

\* *Apoc. C. viii. V. 3, 4.*

† *Acts, C. xx. V. 7.*

‡ *Apoc. C. v. V. 13.*

the prayers of the saints, that is, of the faithful upon earth.

The observation of St. Irenæus\* on these passages extracted from the Apocalypse, is most apposite. That ancient Father very properly remarks ;—‘ either St. John, in order to shadow forth the glory and the splendour of the adoration, which all the choirs of angels and the saints, are continually exhibiting to God within his sanctuary of heaven, must have used an imagery and language descriptive of the ceremonial practised by the Christians of his time in their assemblies on the Lord’s day ; or else, the liturgy of the holy sacrifice, or the Mass, must have been modelled according to the vision of that favourite disciple of our Lord.’ In either case, the liturgy or Mass bears deeply impressed upon it the type of apostolical institution : a consequence we shall more readily acknowledge, when we remember that it is suggested by a writer, who was taught his Christianity by the immediate scholars of the Apostles themselves, and who penned this observation about the year 167 of the Christian era, that is, almost seventeen centuries ago.

VI.—THE REMARKS OF SOME PROTESTANTS NOTICED.

It is a familiar, but unwarrantable observation with separatists from the Catholic Church, that dur-

---

\* *Adver. Haer.* L. 4, Ch. xvii. No. 5, & Ch. xviii. No. 6.

ing the first four centuries, neither adoration was paid to the Eucharist, nor any religious veneration manifested towards angels and saints, or to the relics of martyrs. Conscious of the overwhelming weight possessed by several arguments, which could be drawn from those portions of the book of the Apocalypse we have just referred to, as demonstrative of a regular form of ceremonial for the holy sacrifice and public worship already established during the lifetime of St. John ; and which by demolishing their favourite hypothesis, would detect the very modern novelty of that mode of public service, which they have framed upon its basis, in substitution for the olden one ; they assert, in order to escape from the pressure of such arguments, that the Apocalypse is only the record of a vision, and not a history of facts ; that the throne, the altar, and the sacrifice upon it, seen by St. John, were in heaven, and not upon the earth. Such a remarkable resemblance, however, exists between the more conspicuous outlines of this mysterious representation, drawn in so graphic a manner by the luminous pencil of the Evangelist, and those sketches of the celebration of the Eucharistic mysteries, incidentally pictured by the earlier Fathers in their letters and other writings, and even by Pagans in their remarks upon the Christians around them, or traced with studious and minute accuracy in the liturgies of each particular Church ; that we are compelled to refer

them to one original, from which they have all been copied with but very little and unimportant variation.

Bingham, notwithstanding all his prejudices in favour of his own sect, and his antipathy to Catholic doctrines, has been more liberal than many of his Protestant brethren, for he candidly acknowledges, in his notice of these very passages in the Apocalypse, that ‘ we have here seen the model of the worship of Christ, as begun and settled in the practice of the Church, in the first ages, and we shall find it continued in the same manner, in those that followed immediately after.’\*

VII.—THE LITURGY INDICATED BY ST. IGNATIUS, M.

The seven letters addressed by St. Ignatius to the Christians of Ephesus, and of Magnesia, of Trallia, and of Philadelphia, and of Smyrna, to St. Polycarp, and to the faithful at Rome, just before his martyrdom in that imperial city, about the year 107, furnish several passages more or less descriptive of the manner in which the eucharistic sacrifice or Mass was offered, by each bishop encircled by a crowd of priests and deacons, at that epoch, throughout Asia Minor. A peculiar respect is due to the testimony of a personage who was second in succession from St. Peter in the chair of Antioch,—had listened to the preaching of that

---

\* *Bingham, Origines Ecclesiasticæ*, Book 13, Ch. ii. Sec. 2.

prince of the Apostles, and of St. Paul ; and was the intimate disciple of St. John the Evangelist.

VIII.—NOTICED BY PLINY.

Pliny the younger, who was appointed to the government of Bithynia a few years after the death of the illustrious bishop of Antioch, in a memorial he presented to Trajan, notices concerning the Christians in his province, that some of them who had been brought before his tribunal, had declared to him, that they were accustomed to assemble on a particular day before it was light, and amongst other parts of their worship, chanted a hymn to Christ, as to their God.\*

IX.—DESCRIBED BY ST. JUSTIN.

Of the liturgy observed at Rome, about the year 150, St. Justin Martyr, has left us an interesting description in the first of those two apologies he severally addressed to Antoninus Pius, and Marcus Aurelius. ‘ To him who presides over the brethren, is presented bread, and a cup of water and wine, which he taking, gives praise and glory to the Father, through the name of the Son and the Holy Ghost, and returns thanks in many prayers, that such gifts have been vouchsafed to us. These offices being duly performed, the whole assembly in acclamation, answers Amen: then the ministers,

---

\* *Plin. Lib. 10, Ep. xcvi.*

whom we call deacons, give to each one present to partake of the blessed bread, and the wine and water and take away some to the sick. This food we call the Eucharist, of which they alone are allowed to partake, who believe the doctrines taught by us to be true, and have been washed by Baptism for the remission of sin, and unto regeneration. Nor do we take these gifts as common bread and common drink : but in the same manner as our Saviour Jesus Christ, incarnate by the word of God for our salvation, took flesh and blood, so we have been taught that the food with which, by change, our blood and flesh are nourished, being blessed by the prayer of his word, becomes the flesh and blood of that very incarnate Jesus.\*

The same substantive form of sacrifice which we here observe described by St. Justin Martyr, as practised by the Roman Christians in the second century, was carefully preserved in after ages. A prayer or ceremony it is true, was occasionally added to the ritual ; but always through a wise economy, either to satisfy the devotion, or to express with stronger emphasis against some newly broached heresy, the orthodox faith of the members of that Apostolic Church, which stands this day a glorious monument to testify the truth of the promise made by Christ to Peter, when he said to that Apostle ;—‘ Simon, Simon, behold

---

\* *Apolog. 1. Hagae Comitum*, 1742, p. 82, 83.

Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat,—but I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not ; and thou being once converted, confirm thy brethren ;\* and amongst whom are, and always could be found such saintly men, that the same encomiums, which St. Paul pronounced upon their ancestors, might with justice be passed upon some now living, and on individuals who have ornamented Christian Rome in every century—‘ your faith is spoken of in the whole world.†

The liturgy of the Mass, as celebrated at Rome in the fifth and sixth centuries, is preserved in the Sacramentaries‡ of Gelasius,§ and St. Gregory the Great. From the Roman monk St. Augustin, whom the latter pontiff, St. Gregory, sent to convert our Saxon forefathers, we received along with the other doctrines of genuine Christianity, the sacrifice of the Mass : and the liturgy we practise in celebrating it at the present day, is identically the same in substance, and varies but very little in some few unimportant ceremonies, from the very ritual sent by Pope St. Gregory to England thirteen centuries ago. Thus, not only the doctrine

\* *St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 31, 32.*

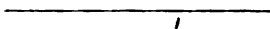
† *Rom. C. i. V. 8.*

‡ Sacramentaries are books which were anciently employed in the Church, and contained the prayers and ceremonies of the Mass, and of the administration of the seven sacraments.

§ Pope Gelasius died in the year 496. St. Gregory flourished a century later.

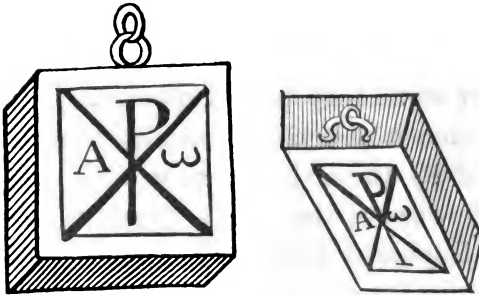


of the Mass, but the form of solemnizing it at the present hour, can be traced up through a well connected chain of evidence, to the time of the Apostles ; and, though the interval of seventeen centuries intervenes between us, still an identity of belief and practice links us together, and morally renders us one religious body with the primitive Christians.



## SECTION II.

## LAY COMMUNION.



Arculae or little boxes, used in the first ages of the Church, by the faithful, for carrying home the blessed Eucharist after Mass.\*

## X.—BELIEF OF THE CHURCH ON LAY COMMUNION.


It is the belief of the Catholic Church that in the most holy sacrament of the Eucharist, the body of Christ is not separated from his blood, nor his blood from his body; nor is either of them

---

\* These boxes were found in the Vatican Catacombs, within different sarcophagi, each lying on the breast of the entombed deceased. They must have belonged to wealthy individuals, as they are of gold. They open in front; and have, fastened at the top, a ring through which might be passed a cord or string; and, thus suspended, they were, no doubt, carried round the neck. There is every reason to esteem these boxes as monuments of antiquity mounting up to the second or third century.—

disjoined from his soul and his divinity ; but all and the whole living Christ is entirely contained under each species ; so that whoever receives under one kind, becomes truly partaker of the whole sacrament : nor is he deprived either of the body, or of the blood of Christ.\* The receiving of the holy communion under one or both kinds, is an article of discipline which the sovereign Pontiff can vary as he may deem expedient.† It is true, indeed, that is an article of discipline which is still observed by the orthodox as well as the schismatical followers of the Greek ritual, to receive the blessed Eucharist under both kinds. So far, however, is the Greek Church from considering communion under the two species as essential to the integrity of the sacrament, that during the whole of Lent, except on Saturdays and Sundays, and the feast of the Annunciation, the Mass, as it is called, of the Presanctified,‡ is alone permitted by its ru-

---

*Pellicia, De Eccl. Christi Politia*, tom. iii. pp. 82, 83. They have engraved on them the monogram of Christ , and Alpha and Omega. Behind, there is a dove, another symbol of our Redeemer.

\* See Prop. in the *Faith of Catholics*, &c. p. 259.

† *Concil. Trident.* Sess. xxii. Ch. 11.

‡ It is so denominated, because it is a Mass in which the priest does not perform the consecration, but receives the blessed Eucharist under one kind alone—that of bread—which was consecrated at a preceding Mass, and reserved for the occasion. By the Greeks the Mass of the

bricks to be celebrated;\* consequently the Greek priest who offers up Mass, as well as those amongst

Presanctified is called—*λειτουργία των προηγιασμένων, δι προηγιασμένοι*,—or simply,—*ἡ προηγιασμένη*. This Mass is not peculiar to them, but is said throughout the Latin Church on Good Friday. Leo Allatius assigns as a reason for the observance of this rite in the East, that the consecration being proper for festivals only; and all the days in Lent except Saturday and Sunday being fasting-days, they do not consecrate on the other days of this week, but receive the holy Eucharist which had been reserved from the preceding Sunday. For it should be observed, that when primitive fervour cooled; and all who attended at Mass, did not, as formerly, partake of the holy sacrifice, a rite was introduced of merely blessing, not consecrating, small pieces of bread, which were afterwards distributed to those amongst the people who did not receive the Eucharist, as a symbol of mutual love, and religious communion. The bread so blessed, though quite distinct from the Eucharist, was denominated—*Εὐλογία*,—Eulogia, or Blessing, a term originally employed to signify the blessed sacrament itself. In the Greek liturgy, whenever the Eucharist is consecrated, the Eulogia is still distributed; and a similar custom is observed in France at the parochial Mass, but instead of Eulogia, it is called by the French—*Pain-bénit*. That the people, therefore, may not break their fast by eating the Eulogia, the Greeks do not consecrate the Eucharist on fasting days. By their Mass of the Presanctified, they demonstrate that, in opposition to Protestants, they, as well as Catholics of the Latin Church, believe not only in the real and corporeal, but permanent presence of Jesus Christ in the blessed sacrament.

\* Leo Allatius, *Epist. ad Nihusium, ad calcem Libri—De Utriusque Ecclesiae consensione*, p. 867.

the laity who may choose to receive the blessed Eucharist, on any other day but Saturday or Sunday or the feast of the blessed Virgin Mary, during the whole penitential season, take the holy communion under one kind only,—that of bread.\* In the Church of Constantinople, which is followed as their guide by most of the other Churches of the Greek schismatical denomination, the Eucharistic species under the form of bread, reserved for the Mass of the Presanctified and the communion of the people, is never sprinkled with the sacred blood.† Moreover in the Greek Church, the Viaticum or Eucharist given to the dying, is administered on all occasions, and at every season of the year, under the sole form of bread alone.‡ Of the

---

\* Hæc Liturgia Præsanctificatorum toto maximi jejunii tempore, exceptis Sabbatis, Dominicis, et die Annuntiationi Sacro, diebus singulis a volentibus peragitur, ergo toto eo tempore Sacerdos celebrans, et administri altari inservientes, et quicumque alius religionis causâ communionem accipiens, sub sola specie panis, cum panis ille sanguine tinctus non est, vel si tinctus, species vini, et consequenter, etiam sanguis evanuerint, communicant.—*Ibid.* p. 876.

† Leo Allatius, *Ibid.* p. 874.

‡ Magna Feria quinta quilibet sacerdos, quos censet pro infirmis et morientibus necessarios futuros panes consecrat, eosque postmodum collectos, et in pyxide vel alio vasculo repositos in sanctuario, donec necessitas fuerit, conservat. Eos quemadmodum et de Præsanctificatis dictum est, alii cochleari sanguine Christi madido tan-

Maronites and other Oriental Christians, Abraham Ecchellensis, himself a Maronite, testifies, that amongst them, the blessed sacrament is administered under one kind only—that of bread—to the sick, to the country people, and to such as on account of the distance of residence, cannot come to church for communion.\* With regard to the Latin Church, it is an historical fact, that during many centuries, communion was generally, though not exclusively, administered under both kinds to the faithful, both men and women, who assisted at the public celebration of the holy sacrifice, at which they had made their offering of bread and wine to be consecrated.†

XI.—COMMUNION UNDER ONE KIND OF APOSTOLIC INSTITUTION.

That from the time, however, of the Apostles, communion has been administered under one kind

---

gunt, alii non tangunt. Cum opus est inter annum, ex eo vasculo micam panis arreptam, et reverenter ad infirmum deportatam, in aquam vel vinum si est in cochleari immergunt, ut mollior facta, facilius deglutiri possit a valde debilitatis, et tum infirmo, recitatis ad hoc præscriptis precibus, porrigunt. Et hoc est Græcorum ægrotantium, morientiumque viaticum. Sed hic nullæ species sanguinis sunt, neque separatus sanguis. Ergo Græci morientes per totum annum in sola specie panis communicant.—*Leo Allatius, Ibid. p. 879.*

\* Bona, *Rer. Lit.* lib. ii. Ch. xviii. num. 2.

† Bona, *Ibid.* num. 1.

only—that of bread—in the manner which is now practised throughout the Latin Church, is attested by all antiquity. In the first ages, when the faithful suffered such grievous persecutions, it was customary to intrust the blessed Eucharist, under the form of bread, to their pious care, for the purpose of being conveyed to the sick, and to those confined in prison for the faith; or to be privately received by themselves at home, when the danger of being apprehended, should prevent them from attending the celebration of the holy mysteries in the catacombs, or other places of assembly.\* In his exhortations to a Christian woman not to marry a Pagan husband, Tertullian observes;—‘ Will he not know what you receive in secret, before you

---

\* The Acolyte St. Tharsicius was arrested by the Pagans, as he was carrying the blessed Sacrament, on one of these occasions, and stoned to death, because he would not betray it to them. Romæ Via Appia passio sancti Tharsicii Acolythi quem Pagani cum invenissent, Corporis Christi sacramenta portantem, cœperunt disquirere quid gereret: at ille indignum judicans porcis prodere margaritas, tam diu ab illis mactatus est fustibus et lapidibus, donec exhalaret spiritum.—*Martyrologium Romanum, Die 15 Augusti*. To the memory of this Martyr were composed the following verses, which are ascribed to Pope St. Damasus, Anno 366.

Tharsicium sanctum Christi Sacramenta gerentem  
Cum malesana manus peteret vulgare prophanis,  
Ipse animam potius voluit dimittere cæsus  
Prodere quam canibus rabidis cœlestia membra.

take any food? \* And if he shall perceive bread, will he not believe it to be what it is called? † The same author, in another part of his writings, to obviate the difficulty which was started by some scrupulous persons against receiving the blessed Eucharist upon a fasting day, lest the fast should be broken by the communion, suggests that ‘ they take the body of the Lord, and reserve it, and thus participate of the sacrifice, as well as comply with the obligation of fasting.’ ‡ The testimony of St. Cyprian is equally lucid on the same subject. That illustrious bishop of Carthage relates an astonishing event which happened to a Christian woman, who, having been guilty of an act of idolatry at a Pagan altar, immediately afterwards presumed ‘ to take in her unhallowed hands, and endeavour to open her ark or little box which contained the sacrament of the Lord, but was so terrified by a burst of fire flashing from within, that she dare not lay hold on it.’ § St. Dionysius, bishop of Alexandria about

---

\* This proves the primitive Christian custom of receiving the blessed Sacrament fasting.

† Non sciet maritus quid secreto ante omnem cibum gustes? Et si sciverit panem, non illum credet esse qui dicitur?—Lib. ii. *Ad Uxorem*, Cap. 5.

‡ Accepto corpore Domini et reservato, utrumque saluum est, et participatio sacrificii, et executio officii.—*De Orat.* Ch. xiv. Tertullian flourished about the year 194.

§ Cum quædam mulier arcam suam in quâ Domini sanctum fuit, manibus indignis tentasset aperire, igne inde



the year 247, in his letter to the Roman pontiff Fabianus, relates that a certain old man, called Serapion, when at the point of death, dispatched a youth for the priest, who happening also to be confined to his bed by sickness, sent to the dying Serapion a particle of the blessed Eucharist by the messenger, whom he directed first to moisten the sacrament with a little water, and then put it into the mouth of the old man, who expired just after receiving the holy communion.\* St. Gregory Nazianzen testifies of his sister Gorgonia, in the funeral oration he pronounced at her obsequies, that she always kept the body of the Lord—the blessed sacrament—in her chamber. The Anachorites who retired into the desert that they might become more perfect by leading a solitary life, used to communicate themselves under the form of bread.† To afford the sick the consolation of participating in the sacrament, and to provide the viaticum‡ in

surgente deterrita est, ne auderet attingere.—*Lib. de lapsis.* St. Cyprian suffered martyrdom in the year 258.

\* Apud Euseb. *Hist. Eccl.* lib. vi. Ch. 44.

† Martene, *De Ant. Eccl. Rit.* lib. i. Ch. 5. Art. III.

‡ Viaticum signifies a provision and preparation for a journey into the other world. By the first Council of Nice, celebrated in 325, it is decreed :—‘ That all penitents shall have their final and necessary Εφόδων, or viaticum, when they are about to die.’

Περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐξοδούντων, ὁ παλαιὸς καὶ κανονικὸς νόμος φυλαχθή-

cases of emergency for the dying, particles of the Eucharist, under the species of bread, were preserved, as is the present custom, in the church, and sometimes enclosed within a golden vessel, made in the form of a dove, which hung suspended by a chain before the altar;\* at other times, were de-

---

σεται καὶ νῦν, ὥς τε, εἴ τις ἐξοδένου, τοῦ τελευταίου καὶ ἀναγκαιωσατοῦ ἐφοδίου μὴ ἀποστερεῖσθαι.—*Canon. 13, apud Labbeum, Conc. Gen. tom. ii. p. 36.*

\* Martene, *De Ant. Eccl. Rit.* lib. i. Ch. 5. Art. III. St. Amphilochius, or whoever was the author of the life of St. Basil, remarks concerning the illustrious prelate, that once, after having consecrated and elevated the sacred Host, he divided it into three parts; one of which he received with much fear,—the second he reserved for his funeral,—and the third he enclosed within a golden dove, and suspended over the altar. Amongst the various accusations preferred against Severus the heretical bishop of Antioch, at the Council of Constantinople held in 536, one was, having appropriated to his own private use, not only the treasures of his church, but the gold and silver doves which were suspended over the baptistry, and at the altar. Τας γὰρ εἰς τύπον τοῦ ἁγίου πνεύματος χρυσας τε καὶ ἀργυρὰς περιστεράς κρεμαμένὰς ὑπεράνω των θείων κολυμβηθρῶν, καὶ θυσιαστηρίων, μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων εσφετερισάτο.—*Concil. Constant. Act. 5. Apud Labbeum, tom. v. p. 160.* The place at the altar where the dove used to be suspended, was called ‘Peristerion,’ from the Greek word,—περιστερὰ, or dove. The Christian poet Sedulius refers to these doves in the following verses:—

Sanctus Columbæ

Spiritus in specie Christum vestivit honore.

and the Pontiff St. Hilarus, Anno 461, presented to one

posited in one of the two chambers, which, in ancient churches, stood on both sides of the altar,\* and were called Pastophoria;† or were placed, as

---

of the churches at Rome, a golden dove weighing two pounds. *Columbam auream pensan. libras 2.*—*Anastas. Biblioth.* tom. i. p. 62. The same custom of reserving the Eucharist in a suspended dove, prevailed in many churches in France until a few years ago.

\* See Ciampini, *Monimenta Vetera*, Tab. 11, vol. i, for the ichnography, or ground plan, of St. Clement's church at Rome, one of the most ancient and venerable monuments of Christian antiquity in existence.

† From the Greek—*παστοφοριον*, or inner chamber. Anciently there were two small recesses,—one on each side of the tribune or sanctuary. In the first of these chambers, the blessed Eucharist was kept; and hence, no doubt, arose the pious custom, now so general in Catholic countries, of having a special and richly decorated chapel for the blessed Sacrament. In the second of these chambers, were deposited the holy Scriptures, the Missal and rituals, together with the sacred vessels, and the vestments of the priests and ministers who used to robe themselves within this recess, and retire thither to pray in private, and make their act of thanksgiving after the holy sacrifice. While these chambers answered all the purposes of our modern Vestry, they were also denominated,—*Secretarium*, *Vestiarium*, *Scenophylacium*, and *Cimelia*. St. Paulinus of Nola, in the graphic description (*Epist. XII. ad Sever.*) which he has bequeathed to us of his church, informs us that it had two Secretaria, one on the right, the other on the left-hand side of the altar; over the entrance to the first were inscribed these verses:—

at this day in England, upon the altar itself, within an ark or tabernacle which was surmounted by the cross.\* From these and numerous other testimonies which might be accumulated from ecclesiastical history, it is evident, that from the earliest periods, communion was very often administered under one kind only.†

Hic locus est veneranda penus quâ conditur, et quâ  
Promitur alma sacri pompa ministerii.

and the two following over the second :—

Si quem sancta tenet meditandi in lege voluntas,  
Hic poterit readens sanctis intendere libris.

\* The second Council of Tours, held in 567, enacted :—  
'That the Body of the Lord should be placed upon the altar, not amid the row of images, but beneath the figure of the Cross ;'—*Ut corpus Domini in altari, non in imaginario ordine, sed sub crucis titulo componatur.*—*Concil. Turon. can. iii. apud Labbeum*, tom. v. p. 853.

† The various facts enumerated in the text, demonstrate that Catholics of the present time precisely agree in faith and practice with Catholics of the primitive ages, since, like them, they believe, not merely in the real, but permanent presence of Jesus Christ in the blessed Eucharist. Luther, therefore, by admitting but a transitory presence of Christ, which he limited to the moment when the communicant receives the sacrament, not only differed with the Church at his day, but with the Church from all antiquity, and was, in consequence, guilty of a notorious innovation.

XII.—WHEN AND WHY GENERALLY ADOPTED BY THE  
LATIN CHURCH.

Towards the commencement of the twelfth century, an alteration took place in the administration of the sacrament, which then began to be administered, in public as well as in private, under one kind only—that of bread. The reasons for such a variation, were the several accidents and abuses which happened through awkwardness and inattention in partaking of the consecrated cup.\* A becoming reverence towards the blessed Eucharist demanded such a change in discipline; and the belief that Christ was wholly present under one as well as under both species, prevented the faithful from erroneously imagining that such a practice could in any wise deprive them of a portion of the sacrament. Nothing, however, was authoritatively promulgated by the Church concerning this regulation until the year 1414, when the Council of Constance, in opposition to John Huss in Bohemia and his partisans, who erroneously asserted that the use of the cup was absolutely necessary, decreed that, as the body and blood of Christ were wholly contained under each species, the custom,

---

\* The Abbot Rodulf, who lived in the year 1110, thus dissuades the use of the cup amongst the laity:—

Hic et ibi cautela fiat, ne presbyter ægris  
Aut sanis tribuat laicis de sanguine Christi.  
Nam fundi posset leviter, simplexque putaret,  
Quod non sub specie sit totus Jesus utraque.

introduced for weighty and just reasons, and long observed in the Church, of communicating in one kind, should be received as a law which no one, without the authority of the Church, might reject or alter.\* In this instance, we cannot too loudly applaud the wise economy of the Church, which has more than once opposed error in faith—and such was that of the Hussites—by an article of discipline or a ritual observance; and no doubt, if circumstances required it, she would not only change this discipline again; but do as Pope Gelasius† did, and insist upon communion being received by all the faithful not under one, but both kinds, if there were any of her members, who, like the Manichæans, at the time that pontiff occupied the see of St. Peter, abstained from the cup through superstition.‡

---

\* *Concil. Constantiense, Apud Labbeum*, tom. xii. p. 100.

† *Apud Gratianum. De consec. diss. 2.*

‡ Pope St. Leo the Great, in one of his sermons, after animadverting on the extravagant opinions concerning the creation of some kinds of matter by the evil spirit, advocated amongst the Manichæans, testifies that one of the many superstitious practices dictated to those heretics by such an error, was an abstinence from the Eucharistic cup;—Cumque ad tegendam infidelitatem suam nostris audeant interesse mysteriis, ita in sacramentorum communione se temperant, ut interdum tutius lateant: ore indigno corpus Christi accipiunt, sanguinem autem redemptionis nostræ haurire omnino declinant.—*S. Leo Magnus, Serm. 4. De Quadrag.*

## XIII.—AGREEABLE TO SCRIPTURE.

That communion under one kind, that of bread, is authorized by the words of Christ himself, may be easily demonstrated. In the sixth chapter of St. John, where the mystery of the holy Eucharist is promised, not only is there made a separate mention of eating; but precisely the same promises of future life which are announced to those who both eat and drink; are also given to such as eat only;—‘If any man,’ says our divine Redeemer, ‘eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give, is my flesh for the life of the world.\* He that eateth me, the same also shall live by me.† He that eateth this bread shall live for ever.‡’

St. Paul, in speaking of the Eucharist, represents it under one kind only, for he says;—‘Whosoever shall eat this bread *or* drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Lord.’§

## XIV.—OBJECTION FROM SCRIPTURE ANSWERED.

It is in vain to pretend that Christ ordained communion under both kinds, when he said;—

\* *St. John, C. vi. V. 52.*    † *Ibid. V. 58.*    ‡ *V. 59*

§ *1 Cor. C. xi. V. 27.* The Protestant version of this passage is corrupted by putting ‘*and drink*’ instead of ‘*or drink*’. Such a translation is warranted neither by the Latin Vulgate ‘*vel biberit,*’ nor by the Greek *ἢ πινῇ*, that is;—‘*or drink.*’

‘Drink ye all of this’\*—for who were the ‘all’ actually present when Christ pronounced these words, and who ‘all’ drank of the chalice?† Not an indiscriminate crowd of the faithful; not the seventy-two disciples with his blessed mother, but the apostles only—those chosen few to whom only, Jesus, in the same place, and on the same occasion, delivered this mandate;—‘Do this for a commemoration of me.’ He who contends that by these words;—‘drink ye all of this’—communion under both kinds was enjoined by our Redeemer upon all, must, by a similar process of argument, likewise necessarily admit; first, that the sacrament may be given to Turks, and Jews, and Pagans, for they constitute an integral part of ‘all’ men; secondly, that all persons, not only men, but women,—even children—are, like the apostles, to become priests, and are commanded to consecrate the bread and wine. By parity of reasoning, this would become indisputable; for the same individuals to whom it was said;—‘Drink ye all of this’—were also commanded thus;—‘Do this for a commemoration of me.’ It is however allowed, on every side, that the consecration of the sacramental species was intended by our Saviour to be performed by those only who should succeed to the powers and the functions of the apostles, because, to these, and through them, to their ministerial successors,

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvi. V. 27.* † *St. Mark, C. xiv. V. 23.*



such a commission was exclusively directed. Precisely in the same manner, it must be acknowledged that the injunction of drinking of the cup, was delivered as a precept, not to the faithful in general, but exclusively to the apostles, and their lawful successors, to be observed by them whenever they should offer up the sacrifice of the Mass, and thus fulfil the commands of Christ, who said—  
'Do this for a commemoration of me.'

The Eucharist is both a sacrifice and a sacrament. In the sacrifice, it is, by divine institution, necessary for the sacrificing priest to consecrate and drink of the chalice in order to complete the sacrifice—the mystic oblation of Christ's body, and the shedding of his blood upon the Cross. In the sacrament, this is not required of the communicant.

There, it is sufficient for him, in order to participate in its substance and its grace, to receive, in a worthy manner, the body and blood of Christ hidden under the appearance of only one outward sign. This sign exists in the appearance of bread. But as Christ is now immortal and impassible, his blood cannot be separated from his body, nor his body from his blood; he, therefore, who receives his body, must necessarily receive his blood, and vice versâ. It should not be forgotten, moreover, that at the last supper, Christ took bread, and blessed it, and broke it, and distributed to each apostle a distinct and separate portion; he did not present them with one whole sacramental bread to

be divided amongst them all. Not so with the cup; he blessed and gave but one, and the same chalice for them all to drink from. His command that all should drink of it, was naturally suggested by this very circumstance: he said to them, therefore, ‘drink ye all of this,’ that he might admonish those who were the first to partake of the consecrated cup, that there were others to participate of it also; and hence, it was to be shared amongst them all in such a manner, that each one might be able to receive a portion. For as he then imparted the power, nay issued his commands to them all, to ‘do for a commemoration of him’ what he had just done—converted bread and wine into his real body and his real blood, and mystically immolated in sacrifice that very body which was given for us,\* and that very blood which was shed for us;† he wished them to receive under both kinds, *then*, that afterwards, when reiterating that same sacrifice in the Mass, they might comprehend the import of those words;—‘Do this for a commemoration of me.’ Hence must it be acknowledged, to borrow the words of the council of Trent,‡ that ‘the whole and entire Christ, and the true sacrament are taken under either kind; and therefore, as to the fruit, that they who thus receive, are deprived of no necessary grace.’

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 19.* † *Ibid, V. 20.* ‡ *Sess. xxi. C. 3.*

## XV.—UNLEAVENED BREAD USED AT THE LAST SUPPER.

Whether the bread employed at the sacrifice of the Mass, be leavened or unleavened, is a circumstance of pure discipline which does not touch the essence of the Eucharist. That our divine Redeemer, however, used unleavened bread at its institution, is a fact concerning which no doubt can be for a moment entertained; for the Evangelists particularly notice that Christ instituted the blessed sacrament on the first day of the Azymes, or of the unleavened bread,\* and after he had, with his apostles, partaken of the Paschal lamb;† at which sacrifice, it was unlawful to make use of any other than unleavened bread.

XVI.—UNLEAVENED BREAD USED BY THE LATIN CHURCH,  
BY THE MARONITES, AND ARMENIANS.

Throughout the Latin Church, unleavened bread is used at Mass, as more in conformity with the example furnished by our Redeemer. It is made thin and circular, and bears upon it either the figure of Christ, or those initials I. H. S. The Maronites, and Armenians also always observe the same practice; the Ethiopian Christians consider it proper to employ unleavened bread at their Mass on Maunday Thursday. The Greek and other oriental Churches, orthodox and schisma-

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvi. V. 17. St. Mark, C. xiv. V. 11. St. Luke, C. xxii. V. 7.*      † *Ibid, C. xxii. V. 2.*

tical, use unleavened bread, which however is not common household bread, but made with much more scrupulous attention, and stamped with a multitude of crosses, and an inscription.

XVII.—THE SACRAMENT HINTED AT IN THE APOCALYPSE.

The sacrament of the blessed Eucharist under the appearance of bread, is beautifully alluded to by St. John in the second chapter and seventeenth verse of his Apocalypse, where it is said ;—‘ To him that overcometh I will give the hidden manna, and I will give him a white counter,\* and in the counter, a new name written, which no man knoweth but he that receiveth it.’

It is necessary to premise, that amongst the ancient Greeks it was a custom to vote, on public

---

\* The Protestant version renders the Greek ψῆφος by the term ‘ stone :’ the Catholic by the word ‘ counter.’ The latter translation is to be preferred as more conformable to the manners of the period in which St. John wrote, and consequently better calculated to express his meaning. As little pebble stones were originally used in Greece to announce a public sentence, afterwards it happened that whatever might be casually substituted in their place, although of wood or ivory, as well as the vote or sentence itself, was indiscriminately denominated by the term ψῆφος—a pebble. Hence this word is employed in the Acts of the Apostles, (c. xxvi. v. 10) to signify a judicial sentence, and is translated in the Protestant version by the word ‘ voice ’ and not ‘ stone.’

occasions, with white and black pebbles\* gathered on the sea shore, or the banks of a river. In process of time, these little stones were exchanged for small circular pieces of wood or ivory, fashioned like our modern counters. At the election of the magistracy, each citizen inscribed the name of his favourite candidate, upon the pebble or the counter supplied for such a purpose; and thus gave his suffrage in his support. While the application of such a usage to the Eucharist is so happy, it cannot be satisfactorily explained, excepting by a belief in the real presence, and a reference to the Catholic form of celebrating that tremendous mystery.

According to the doctrine of the Church, it is here the victor over sin, is given to feed upon the body and blood of Jesus Christ, the real manna, hidden, it is true, but for that very reason truly present under the appearances of bread and wine. The sacramental host resembles, in colour and in form, the white counter of the ancients; and bears upon it, the impress and the initial letters of the sacred name which no man rightly estimates, or can accurately know except the true believer. If, in the sacrament, there were nothing but a common piece of bread,—not transubstantiated into the body of our Lord,—but quite unchanged, dead,

---

\* *Mos erat antiquus, niveis atrisque lapillis*

*His damnare reos, illis absolvere culpā.*—*Ovid, Met. L. xv. V. 42.*

inanimate bread, not that living bread which came from heaven,—how could the Christian's manna—the flesh and blood of Jesus, be hidden under it? How could a new name be written on such bread when it still continued to remain what it was before; or what name would it be?

The Catholic doctrine of the Eucharist, can alone give sense and meaning to this passage, which, at the same time that it derives its true interpretation from such a tenet, reciprocally renders an important suffrage in favour of this mysterious article of faith.

XVIII.—CIRCULAR FORM OF THE HOST VERY ANCIENT.

The custom of forming the Eucharistic host flat and circular, may be traced back to the remotest periods of Christian antiquity. The holy pontiff St. Zephyrinus, who flourished in the third century, denominates the sacramental bread, a crown or oblation of a spherical figure;—‘*Corona sive oblata sphæricæ figuræ.*’\*

Honorius of Autun in France,† about the year 1130, and Durandus,‡ towards 1286, both assign to this orbicular form of the host a mystic signification.

\* Vide *Benedictum* xiv. *De sacrificio Missæ*, Lib. I, Ch. vi. Sect. 4.

† *Gemma Animæ*, Ch. xli. num. 8.

‡ *In Rationali*, Lib. 4, Ch. xxx. num. 8.

The Greeks prepare their hosts, occasionally square as well as circular,\* for which the following mystic reason is furnished. The circle is allusive to the divinity, which the bread and wine receive, when they are transubstantiated: the square expresses, that, by the sacrifice of Christ upon the Cross, salvation is imparted to the four quarters of the earth, to east and west, and north and south. Whether the host be round or square, the allusion to it in the book of Apocalypse, under the designation of a counter, is equally appropriate.

---

\* *Gabriel Philadelphiensis in Apol. pro Ecc. Orien.*

---

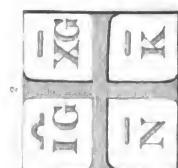
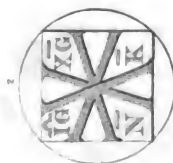
The obverse of the Russian Imperial seal of the 18th century.



The reverse of the Russian Imperial seal of the 18th century.



The obverse of the Russian Imperial seal of the 18th century, showing the coat of arms and the inscription 'АВТОКРАТОР'.



The reverse of the Russian Imperial seal of the 18th century.





# **CONTENTS.**

---

## **CHAPTER III.**

### **ON THE TERM MASS.**

- 1. Meaning of the word Mass.—2. Origin of it.—3. The antiquity of its use.**



## PART THE SECOND.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### ON THE TERM MASS.

THE unbloody sacrifice of the new law, predicted with so much emphasis by Malachias, when the Prophet says;—‘From the rising of the sun even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles; and in every place there is a sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean offering;’\* has been designated by a variety of expressions, at the several periods of the Christian era. It has however been for more than fourteen hundred years denominated almost exclusively by the word Mass,† throughout the Latin Church; and for the same period, has gone under the appropriate term of Liturgy amongst the Greeks.

---

\* *Malach. C. i. V. 11.*

† In the first edition of the Protestants’ prayer book, called the book of Common Prayer, the communion service is entitled ‘The supper of the Lord,’ and holy communion, commonly called the Mass.

## I.—MEANING OF THE WORD MASS.

The Latin word *Missa*, is a contraction of *Missio*, which signifies a dismissal or permission to depart as soon as the sacrifice is completed. Such abbreviations are not unusual with profane\* as well as ecclesiastical writers.

## II.—ORIGIN OF IT.

The origin of denominating the holy Eucharistic sacrifice, by the term Mass or dismissal, arose from a ceremony, which in the earliest ages of the Church, was observed on two several occasions, and still continues to be practised once, during its celebration.

Immediately after the reading of the Gospel, and the delivery of the sermon by the Bishop, the Deacon turned about to the assembly, and in an elevated tone of voice, admonished the different persons who composed it, that the initiated only might remain, and consequently the unbaptized, and unbeliever, were required to depart.

---

\* The classic reader will have noticed examples of this in the writings of Cicero, Virgilius, Ovidius, and Suetonius. In the works of the Fathers may be discovered similar expressions. Tertullian and St. Cyprian use 'remissa' for 'remissio.' The first observes:—*Diximus de remissa peccatorum. Tertul. lib. 4. Adver. Marcionem.* The Bishop of Carthage says:—*Dominus baptizatur a*

The formula common to the Greek as well as to the Latin Church, employed on this occasion, was to the following effect; 'The Catechumens are dismissed; the faithful shall remain.'\* Hence it was, that the portion of the Liturgy or common service which preceded the Creed and Offertory, was denominated 'the Mass of the Catechumens,'† since those, who were distinguished by such an appellation, were dismissed from the Church,‡ and not

servo et remissam peccatorum daturus ipse non dedignatur lavacro regenerationis corpus abluere. *S. Cyp. de bono Patientiæ.* In both these passages 'remissa' is used instead of 'remissio,' like Missa for Missio.

\* This we gather from Isidorus, who wrote in the year 595: 'Missa' says that writer:—'Missa dicta est ab emitendo. Nam tempore quo sacerdos incipit consecrare Corpus Dominicum, dicendum est a Diacono post Evangelium—Si quis Catechumenus est procedat foras; et quia tunc emittuntur catechumeni ab Ecclesia, ideo dicitur Missa ab emitendo.' *Etymolog. L. vi. C. 19.*

† The Catechumens were such as had abandoned the synagogue, or passed over from Gentilism to become Christians; and, as their name implies, were under a course of catechetical instructions previously to their being admitted to the sacrament of Baptism.

‡ They were dismissed with the following formulas by the Deacon in the Latin Church:—Catechumeni recedant: si quis Catechumenus est, recedat; omnes Catechumeni recedant foras. The style of the Greek Church was similar. The Deacon first of all intimated to all heathens

permitted to assist at the sacrifice which was then beginning.\*

As soon as the Eucharistic sacrifice was terminated, the Deacon proclaimed to the congregated faithful that they might withdraw. This he announced by a form of speech which to the present day remains in use.—*Ite Missa est*: ‘Go, leave is given to depart,’†—hence arose, in the earliest ages amongst our venerable predecessors in the faith, a custom of denominating the second part of the sacred Liturgy, ‘the Mass of the Faithful.’ From this we gather, that the whole of the Liturgy or public service, was by the ancients, comprehended, under two general divisions, to each of which they assigned a distinctive appellation. The first, was termed the Mass of the Catechumens—‘*Missa Catechumenorum*’;—the second the Mass of the Faithful—‘*Missa Fidelium*.’—In order

---

and heretics to withdraw:—*Μή τις τῶν ἀκρομένων μή τις τῶν ἀπίστων*. (*Constit. lib. viii. C. 5.*) Then were recited the prayers over the Catechumens and public penitents. Afterwards the Deacon proclaimed to all who were not communicants to retire: *οἱ ἀκοινώνητοι περιπατήσατε*. *Constit. lib. viii. C. 12.*

\* Here commenced the more solemn part of the service in which were included the prayers of the faithful.—*Εὐχαὶ πιστῶν*, as they are called by the council of Laodicea. (*Can. xix.*)

† The ‘*Ite Missa est*,’ of the Latin Church, corresponds with the *ἀπολύεσθε* and *προέλθετε* in the Greek Liturgy.

to express these two portions of the Liturgy in the language of the present time, we should denominate the one, Ante-communion service, the latter, the communion service. When the discipline of the secret fell into disuse and public penance was abolished, an exclusion from the sacred mysteries, and consequently the distinction between the Mass of the Catechumens and the Mass of the Faithful, ceased to be observed; and the entire form of prayer, from the beginning to the end, employed in offering up the Eucharistic sacrifice, was denominated by the exclusive term, Mass, as at present.

That the whole of the Liturgy should have received its name from an incidental ceremony, will cease to awaken our surprise, when we remember that reasons, almost similar, have determined those appellations which usage has affixed to certain other functions of the Church. The service chanted at the solemn obsequies for the repose of a departed soul, is called a Dirge from the antiphon of the first nocturn at Matins, which begins with the word 'Dirige.' The Thursday in Holy week, which is more generally known by the appellation of Maunday Thursday, received its name from a corresponding circumstance, as the ceremony of the washing of feet commences with the chant of the anthem:— 'Mandatum,' &c.



## III.—THE ANTIQUITY OF ITS USE.

Of the antiquity of the word Mass, it may be observed, in respect to England, that the employment of this appellation is coeval with the re-introduction and establishment of the Christian faith in Britain during the sixth century, through the zeal of the Roman pontiff, St. Gregory the Great, and the labours and the preaching of the monk St. Augustin and his Roman brethren. This is attested by almost every document belonging to the earliest periods of our ecclesiastical or civil history, as well as by the canons extant of those national and provincial Councils which have been celebrated amongst us. In reference to Rome, to whom we are indebted for our earliest knowledge of the faith of Christ; in reference to Italy, and to the Western Church in general, we have authorities that certify the employment of the word Mass, to designate the public Liturgy, as far back as the second age. Pius, the first of that name who filled the chair of St. Peter, addressed a letter, about the year 166 to the Bishop of Vienne, in Gaul. The Roman pontiff commences his epistle by observing to the Gallican prelate :—‘As you well remember, our sister Euprepia conveyed over to the poor her house in which we are now residing, and where we celebrate *Mass*.’\* In the year 254, Pope Cor-

---

\* Soror nostra Euprepia, sicut bene recordaris, titulum domus suæ pauperibus assignavit ubi nunc commorantes

nelius also addressed a letter to Lupicinus, another bishop of the same city, and informs him such was the fury of the persecution then kindled against the Christians at Rome, that they durst not venture to offer up *Mass*, even in the catacombs which were any-wise noted.\*

In the acts of St. Stephen it is mentioned, that this holy Pope and martyr went about celebrating Mass in the catacombs of Rome.†

Writing in the year 374 to his sister Marcellina, and detailing some disturbances which took place at Milan, when an attempt was made to seize upon a Church, St. Ambrose says:—‘The next day, which was Sunday, whilst I was expounding the Creed, information was brought me, that officers

*Missas agimus.—Epist. Pii ad Justum Episc. Vien. Apud Labbeum, Concil. Gen. tom. i. p. 576.*

\* The pontiff thus begins his letter:—*Scias, frater carissime, arcam dominicam vento persecutionis acerrime commoveri.....unde publice neque in cryptis notioribus Missas agere Christianis licet.—Epist. Cornelii ad Luper. Apud Labbeum. Concil. Gen. p. 681.*

† During the persecution lighted up by Valerian in the year 257, St. Stephen was beheaded in the catacombs by a band of soldiers sent to apprehend him. This pontiff was discovered in the act of offering up the Eucharistic sacrifice, which was scarcely concluded when he was thrust into his pontifical chair, and his head severed from his body. This chair is still preserved at Pisa.

had been deputed to seize the Portian Church; I continued to perform my duty, and began *Mass*.\*

In the year 390 was celebrated the second Council of Carthage which had been assembled by Genethlius, and was composed of all the prelates of the Church through Africa. In the third amongst those thirteen canons enacted by that synod, we find it was prohibited for ecclesiastics, who were simply priests, to receive again to the communion of the Church, and to reconcile any one at public *Mass*.†

---

\* Ego mansi in munere, Missam facere cœpi.—*S. Ambr. Epist. 13*. In one of his discourses, the same illustrious bishop thus admonishes his people:—Moneo vos, ut qui juxta ecclesiam est, et sine gravi impedimento potest, quotidie audiat Missam.—*S. Ambr. Sermon. 34*.

† Reconciliare quemquam in publica Missa, presbytero non licere, hoc omnibus placet.—*Labbeus, Concil. Gen. tom. ii. p. 1160*.

---

## CONTENTS.

---

### CHAPTER IV.

#### ON THE USE OF LATIN AT MASS.

1. An unknown tongue used in the Jewish temple.—2. Not blamed by Christ, who prayed in an unknown tongue.—3. Reasons why the Catholic Church uses Latin at Mass.—4. The people not necessarily obliged to understand the language of the Mass.—5. Latin at Mass no-wise prejudicial to the people.—6. Greeks, Syrians, Copts, and Armenians, use an unknown tongue at Mass.—7. Objection answered.—8. Stricture on the Protestant version of the words of St. Paul.



## PART THE SECOND.

---

### CHAPTER IV.

#### ON THE USE OF LATIN AT MASS.

**THOUGH** the Church has never pretended that it was necessary to write and celebrate the Liturgy in a language not understood by the people, she has never considered it as imperatively requisite that her service should be performed in the vulgar tongue; and that the language which she speaks in her public service, should follow the changes and variations incidental to the vernacular idioms of those several nations which compose her household. This Babel-like commixture, variety, and dissonance, would have been productive of much confusion, and serious inconvenience.

#### I.—AN UNKNOWN TONGUE USED IN THE JEWISH TEMPLE.

In this respect the spouse of Christ has imitated the example furnished to her by the ancient synagogue. From the commencement of the Jewish dispensation, up to the conquest of Jerusalem by

Nebuchadonosor,\* genuine Hebrew, the language in which the Pentateuch, and most of the old Scriptures are written, was the only tongue familiar to the Israelites. The sacred volume was recited, and the service of the Temple was performed in the language common to the nation. But during their seventy years' captivity, the Jews forgot their ancient Hebrew, and adopted the Syriac, or Chaldaic, as their ordinary language. On their return, however, to Jerusalem, no change was made in the language of the sanctuary. The law, and the Prophets, were still read in pure Hebrew to the people assembled in the synagogues; and the public service of the Temple was celebrated before them in the same language, although they did not understand it.

A practice so religiously observed after the Babylonish captivity, is continued with the same scrupulous exactitude to the present day amongst the Jews, who have their ritual performed, and recite their prayers in ancient Hebrew, in whatever country they happen to reside.

II.—NOT BLAMED BY CHRIST, WHO PRAYED IN AN UNKNOWN TONGUE.

Had there been any blame attached to the custom of praying in a strange or unknown tongue, Christ would, undoubtedly, have enumerated this

---

\* 4 *Kings*, C. xxv. Protestant Version, 2 *Kings*, &c.

amongst the other accusations which he so unhesitatingly advanced against the Scribes and Pharisees. Not only, however, did he tacitly approve of such a practice, as he did not pass a stricture on it; but he exhibited his public approbation of its use, by frequenting the Temple on occasions when it was observed; and more than this, the very moment he was offering up himself a bloody sacrifice upon the Cross, he prayed, and prayed aloud, in the hearing of the multitude around him, in a language which they did not understand: 'Eli, Eli, lama sabacthani,' he ejaculated, as he yielded up the spirit; and the people, mistaking the pure Hebrew word Eli for the name of one of the prophets, said:—'This man calleth Elias.'\*

### III.—REASONS WHY THE CATHOLIC CHURCH USES LATIN AT MASS, ETC.

The Catholic Church has been induced by several persuasive reasons to celebrate the holy sacrifice of the Mass in the Latin language throughout almost all the nations of Europe.

1st. Latin was the ancient language employed by St. Peter when he first said Mass at Rome; and such was the language, in which that prince of the Apostles drew up the Liturgy, which, along

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvii. V. 46, 47.*—Eli, in hebrew אֱלִי is, a compound of אֱלֹהִים, *God*, and the suffix of the first person י, *of me*.



with the knowledge of the gospel, he, or his successors the Popes, imparted to the different people of Italy, of France, and Belgium, of Spain, of Portugal, of England, Ireland and Scotland, of Germany, of Hungary and of Poland.\*

2nd. From the time of the Apostles, Latin has been invariably employed at the altar through the western parts of Christendom, though their inhabitants very frequently did not understand that language. Hence the Catholic Church, through an aversion to innovations, carefully continues to celebrate her Liturgy in that same tongue which apostolic men, and saints have used, for a similar purpose, during more than eighteen centuries.†

---

\* Le Brun. Tome Troisième, p. 137, 138.

† The inhabitants of the British isles and of all the northern parts of Europe, knew nothing of the Latin language, when they were converted to the Christian faith. This, however, did not prevent their religious instructors from always celebrating the Mass and administering the sacraments in Latin, though the people could not understand it. In reference to this subject Dr. Lingard makes the following remarks in his valuable work,—*The Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church*.—‘Both the Mass and the canonical service were performed in Latin. For the instruction of the people, the Epistle and Gospel were read, and the sermon was delivered in their native tongue: but God was always addressed by the ministers of religion in the language of Rome. The missionaries, who, from whatever country they came, had been accustomed to this rite

3rd. A uniformity in public worship is thus more securely preserved, since a Christian, in whatever country he may chance to be, will encounter no inconvenience with regard to his attendance at church; for he still beholds the service performed, in every place, according to the self same rite, and in precisely the same language, to which he has been accustomed at home, from his early childhood.

Supposing it were the practice of the Church to celebrate her Liturgy in each of the several languages common to those respective nations that dwell within her widely extended pale, instead of possessing, as at present, the advantages of understanding the offices of religion, when a thousand miles from home, the Englishman for example, would find himself a stranger at their celebration in more than one spot within the narrow circuit of the British islands; and would perceive it to be as easy to comprehend the service on the sabbath-day when performed in Irish in Ireland, in Welsh

---

from their infancy, would have deemed it a degradation of the sacrifice, to subject it to the caprice and variations of a barbarous idiom; and their disciples, who felt not the thirst of innovation, were proud to tread in the footsteps of their teachers.' p. 199. The practice of the Catholics of England at the present day, perfectly coincides with that followed, a thousand years ago, by their Anglo-Saxon ancestors.

in Wales, in the Manx language in the Isle of Man, in the Gaelic, or in the Low-land tongue in Scotland, as if recited in Persian, or in any of the oriental dialects.

Although the same order and distribution in the prayers of the Liturgy, and the same ceremonies in celebrating it, might indeed supply an index to guide the foreigner in accompanying the priest who was saying Mass in the idiom of the country; still, however, this advantage would be comparatively little. It would be more than neutralized by the distractions to which this foreigner's devotion would be almost necessarily exposed. For not only his attention must be interrupted, but his religious gravity might stand in danger of being discomposed, by the novel, and, to a stranger, sometimes ludicrous sounds of those uncouth dialects which are peculiar to certain portions not only of Great Britain, but of every other empire. The same difficulty does not apply to the use of Latin. A Catholic of the western Church, whether he be a Mosquito Indian, or a Chinese, an Italian, or an Icelander, never hears any other language but Latin spoken in the sanctuary. He grows up accustomed to it. To him it has nothing strange or curious; on the contrary, his ear becomes familiarized with it, and he listens to its accents with religious veneration.

4th. To avoid those changes, to which all living languages, as we find by experience in our own,

are perpetually exposed,\* the Church has prudently determined to retain the Latin as the language of the altar: for she perceives the danger and inconvenience of altering the expressions of her Liturgy at every change and variation in language.

IV.—THE PEOPLE NOT NECESSARILY OBLIGED TO UNDERSTAND THE LANGUAGE OF THE MASS.

The same reasons which prevented the Jewish priesthood from allowing any alteration in the language of their service, have, at all times, persuaded the whole Catholic Church, whether distinguished under the appellations of Latin, Greek, or Armenian, not to permit the slightest change or variation in the idioms in which her respective Liturgies were originally composed. During the Mosaic Law, the public service of the Temple was sacrifice. In the Gospel dispensation, the Mass, or public service of the Church, is also sacrifice. But in the performance of this sacred function, no

---

\* This remark has been corroborated by a passage in a sermon, preached in St. Luke's Church, Liverpool, on Sunday, June 5th, 1831; by the Rev. James Aspinall, A.M. in which that gentleman, speaking on the services of the Church of England, observes:—'The omission of some obsolete words and phrases, of which time has changed the meaning, or to which it has given a stronger meaning than they bore when adopted; is a point in which criticism demands improvement.' p. 5.

office is assigned to the people. The sacrifice is offered up by the priest in their name and on their behalf. The whole action is between God and the priest. So far is it from being necessary that the people should understand the language of the sacrifice, that they are not allowed even to hear the most important and solemn part of it; and in the Eastern Churches, they are not permitted so much as to see either priest or altar.\* They attend indeed, and pray, as the crowd did while Zachary was within the Temple: but they do not act; they do not say the prayers of the priest; they have nothing to do with the actual performance of the holy sacrifice.

V.—LATIN AT MASS NO-WISE PREJUDICIAL TO THE PEOPLE.

It cannot be prejudicial to the poor Catholic who is ignorant of Latin, that the Mass is celebrated in that tongue. Because, in the first place, the pastors of the Church are very careful to comply with the injunctions of the council of Trent,† and

---

\* The Greek and Oriental Liturgies direct the sanctuary to be separated from the body of the Church by a partition-wall in which there are three doors. As soon as the more solemn portion of the Mass, the Canon, commences, veils are drawn over these doors, so that the priest and his assistants remain unseen.

† *Concil. Trident. Sess. xxii. Ch. 8.*

to instruct their flocks in the nature of that great sacrifice, and to explain to them in what manner they should accompany the officiating priest with prayers and devotions best adapted to every portion of the Mass. In the second place, the faithful in the old Law could derive much edification, and exhibited a great deal of real piety, when assisting at the service of the temple, though they could neither understand the words, nor oftentimes so much as observe the actions of the officiating minister. No one but the high-priest, and he, but once a year, might enter into the sanctuary, which was within the veil before the Propitiatory; and it was particularly enjoined that no man should be in the Tabernacle at the time, as may be learned from the sixteenth chapter of Leviticus. In the first chapter of St. Luke, we read, that 'all the multitude of the people was praying without at the hour of incense, while, according to the custom of the priestly office, it was Zachary's lot to offer incense going into the Temple.' In a similar way a devout Christian may assist, with much profit and fervent devotion, at the celebration of the great Eucharistic sacrifice of the new Law—the Mass—though he may not understand the language of the prayers which the priest is reciting. Imagine, reader, you, or any other faithful believer in Jesus, had been present on Mount Calvary at the time our divine Redeemer was immolating himself upon the Cross, a sacrifice for the sins of the whole

world; supposing that you had the same lively faith in Christ which animates you now; would not the view of all that painful scene have been sufficient to awaken in your soul the most lively sensations of the love of God, and have made you utter thanksgivings for such tenderness of mercy, at the same time that you avowed a detestation of your former sinfulness, though indeed you were not able to catch one word from the lips of Christ, your High Priest, or if you did hear his prayer on the Cross, like the surrounding Jews, could not understand its language?\*

Just so in the Mass, which is the self same sacrifice as that which Christ presented to his Father on the Cross; because both the Priest and the Victim are the same. It is abundantly sufficient to kindle the devotion of the people, that they be well instructed in what is going forward; and that they excite in their souls appropriate acts of adoration, thanksgiving, and repentance, though they may not understand the prayers which the priest is uttering.

- \* VI.—GREEKS, SYRIANS, COPTS, AND ARMENIANS, USE AN UNKNOWN TONGUE AT MASS.

From the days of the Apostles, the liturgy of the Mass has been celebrated in Greek, and in Latin, in Syriac, and in Coptic. Since the fourth century it has also been solemnized in Ethiopic and Armenian.

---

\* *St. Matt. C. xxvii. V. 47, 49.*

The language of those liturgies was never changed, although the people for whom they were originally drawn up, and amongst whom they still continue to be celebrated, have entirely transformed their ancient language, and are perfectly incapable of understanding it, at the present time, in its original form.

Hence, it follows, as a consequence, that the Latin Church acts only in the spirit of all the ancient Churches from the days of the Apostles; since, like them, she refuses to exchange her ancient for a modern language.

#### VII.—OBJECTION ANSWERED.

Against the practice of saying Mass in Latin, not unfrequently is noticed the fourteenth chapter of the first Epistle to the Corinthians, in which St. Paul condemns the use of some unknown tongues, in the assemblies of the Church. But on this subject it may be observed, in the first place, St. Paul does not utter one single word, from the commencement to the conclusion of this letter, concerning the liturgy of the Church. In the second place, the purport of the apostle in this portion of his writings, is only to reprehend the abuse of the gift of tongues, a fault committed by some amongst the Corinthians, who, out of idle ostentation, affected to deliver exhortations, and to pour forth extemporary prayers, at their assemblies, in a language entirely unknown, which, for want of an interpreter, could



furnish no edification to the rest of the faithful. Such, however, is far from being the practice of the Catholic Church, where all exhortations, sermons, and similar instructions are delivered to the people in a language which they understand ; where no unknown, extemporary, or modern prayers are recited ; but an ancient public liturgy is performed, which, by daily use, has not only become familiar, but is well known, at least as to the substance, to all the faithful ; where in fine there is no want of interpreters, since the people have the Church service translated for them in her ordinary prayer-books, like the one which you are now perusing ; and the pastors are commanded to explain to them the mysteries, and doctrines comprehended in the Mass.\* In the third place, St. Paul, far from reprehending the use of an unknown tongue, when employed with devotion and humility, approved of it in the clearest manner, nay,—absolutely requires that no one should prohibit such a custom : for the Apostle, in the thirty-ninth verse of that same chapter commands ;—‘ To speak with tongues forbid ye not.’

VIII.—STRICTURE ON THE PROTESTANT VERSION OF THE  
WORDS OF ST. PAUL.

Before dismissing this subject, it may be proper to remark the disingenuous conduct resorted to by

---

\* *Concil. Trident*, Sess. xxii. Ch. 8.

the authors of the authorized English version of the scriptures, in their translation of the fourteenth chapter of St. Paul's first Epistle to the Corinthians. It should be sedulously kept in view, that a reference is made in this chapter to certain languages unknown to the people, which St. Paul condemns some amongst the Corinthians for employing at their public assemblies ; and to other languages equally unknown, but the use of which is entirely approved of by the Apostle. The Protestant translators have superadded to the original Greek text, the word ' unknown,' in verses 2, 4, 13, 14, 19 and 27 ; but in verses 18 and 39, where the use of a language, though it be unknown to the people, is approved of, notwithstanding precisely the same phrase occurs in the Greek original, they have not inserted the word ' unknown,' as in the other verses.

It would appear from history that the English Protestant Church is not entirely hostile to the celebration of her liturgy, when convenience or caprice may suggest it, in a language unknown to the people : for Dr. Heylin informs us that in the reign of Queen Elizabeth,—‘ the Irish Parliament passed an act for the uniformity of the common prayer, with permission of saying the same in Latin, where the minister had not the knowledge of the English tongue. But for translating it into Irish there was no care taken. The people are required by that statute, under several penalties, to frequent their churches and to be present at the reading of

the English liturgy, which they understood no more than they do the Mass: by which means we have furnished the papists with an excellent argument against ourselves, for having the divine service celebrated in such a language, as the people do not understand.\*

‘The universities of Oxford and Cambridge, together with the colleges of Eton and Winchester, obtained permission from the head of their church, to celebrate the divine service in the Latin language.’†

In the Sun newspaper appeared the following paragraph:—‘The clergy as usual, on the opening of a session, assembled yesterday morning in convocation at the Chapter-house in St. Paul’s churchyard, whence they went in procession to the Cathedral. The archbishop of Canterbury took his seat in the dean’s stall, the bishop of London on his throne, and the bishops of Salisbury and Bangor, in the prebendal stalls to the right of his Grace. The latter, then, as junior bishop, read the Latin Litany. A Latin sermon was delivered by Dr. Burton, of Christ’s church, Oxford; at its conclusion, ‘Gloria in Excelsis’ was chaunted by the choir, after which the archbishop dismissed the congregation with the usual blessing, also in Latin, and the procession returned to the Chapter-house.’‡

---

\* *Dr. Heylin’s Hist. of the Reformation*, p. 128.

† *Wilk, Counc. Tom. iv. p. 217.*

‡ *Sun*, Oct. 28, 1830.

## CONTENTS.

---

### CHAPTER V.

#### ON THE INVOCATION OF SAINTS AND ANGELS.

1. Immeasurable distance between the worship given to God, and the reverence shown to the Saints.—2. Religious respect may be rendered to Saints and Angels.—3. The Angels and Saints make intercession for men.—4. Inferred from the communion of Saints in the Apostles' creed.—5. From the charity which animates the Saints.—6. The invocation of Angels proved from Scripture,—from the Psalms,—from Genesis,—from the Apocalypse.—7. The invocation of Saints proved from Scripture.—8. Holy men have, even in this life, been invoked by others.—9. Invocation of Saints in the primitive Church proved from ancient inscriptions.—10. Invocation of Saints in the Anglo-Saxon Church.—11. Contained in all the Liturgies.—12. Objections answered.—13. Charity engages the Saints to pray for us.—14. They have the power of doing it.—15. They know what passes upon earth.—16. Their intercession not derogatory to the mediatorship of Christ.—17. Manner of addressing God through the Saints.—18. Similarity of Catholic and Protestant prayers.—19. Inconsistency of an objection.



## PART THE SECOND.

---

### CHAPTER V.

#### ON THE INVOCATION OF SAINTS AND ANGELS.

THE Catholic Church teaches that—‘ the Saints, reigning with Christ, offer up their prayers to God for men ; that it is good and profitable suppliantly to invoke them; and to have recourse to their prayers and assistance, in order to obtain favours from God, through his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, who is our *only* Redeemer and Saviour!’\*

From announcing, in her own language, this tenet of the Church of Christ concerning the invo-

---

\* Mandat sancta Synodus omnibus Episcopis et cæteris docendi munus curamque sustinentibus ut....fideles diligenter instruant docentes eos, Sanctos unà cum Christo regnantes, orationes suas pro hominibus Deo offerre, bonum atque utile esse suppliciter invocare; et ob beneficia impetranda à Deo per Filium ejus Jesum Christum, Dominum nostrum, *qui solus noster Redemptor et Salvator est*, ad eorum orationes, opem auxiliumque confugere. *Con. Trid. Sess. xxv. in initio.*

cation of the angels and saints; we will now proceed to enumerate some few of the many passages from Scripture which so forcibly confirm this doctrine; and at the same time endeavour to arrange these proofs in such a way, as to establish the necessity of its belief, while we overthrow those objections raised against the divine truth of this dogma, in the same order which its impugnors follow in assailing it.

I.—IMMEASURABLE DISTANCE BETWEEN THE WORSHIP  
GIVEN TO GOD, AND THE REVERENCE SHOWN TO  
THE SAINTS.

It has been, unwarrantably, assumed by Protestants, that the Catholic, by invoking, must necessarily worship the saints and angels as divinities; and, therefore, as often as he entrusts his prayers to any one amongst them, transfers to the creature that divine and superior homage which belongs to God alone. But this is false; and as the premises, so the consequences deduced from them are equally erroneous. The Catholic believes that the most flagitious of all crimes would be, to exhibit the slightest particle of that respect and adoration pertaining to the divine being, towards any creature, however preeminent for sanctity amongst his fellow men, or highly exalted in heaven amid the hierarchy of angels, or the choir of blessed Saints. The Catholic, however, can easily point out a difference between divine worship, and the honour

he manifests towards the saints. There is a supreme and sovereign homage, which belongs exclusively to God, by reason of his deity and infinite perfections. The exhibition of this sovereign homage constitutes divine worship, which may not, at any time, or, for any reason, be yielded to any other being whatsoever. Such supreme religious homage has in the language of the Schools, been denominated *Latria*.<sup>\*</sup> There is an infinitely inferior honour which may be lawfully rendered to many of God's creatures. By an express and separate injunction of the Decalogue, we are directly commanded to honour our father and our mother; and, indirectly to show all becoming honour and deference to our superiors, both spiritual and civil. We honour all those whose rank and dignity challenge, or whose virtues and whose talents induce us to yield them our spontaneous tribute; and yet in all these instances, we neither transfer the honour which belongs to God to a creature; nor defraud him of any portion of that reverence and worship which belong to him by divine right. There is some thing intermediate between divine perfection, and human excellence; for instance, grace and the glory of the saints. These are supernatural and most transcendent gifts; and the church, to tell her grati-

---

<sup>\*</sup> From the Greek *λατρεία*—the worship due to God only—from *λατρεύω*, to serve, to worship.



tude towards God for such unmerited benefits, pays an honour and a reverence infinitely inferior to divine worship, but more elevated than human respect, to all those departed servants of Heaven, who have been distinguished by such favours, and hallowed with such extraordinary sanctity. In other words, instead of honouring the creature, she honours those rays of grace and holiness which emanate from the throne of the Creator, and are reflected in his saints—those mirrors of virtue and righteousness. Such a reverence is called ‘*Dulia*.’\*

## II.—A RELIGIOUS RESPECT MAY BE RENDERED TO SAINTS AND ANGELS.

That we may manifest our inferior, though religious veneration towards the angels and the saints, is demonstrated by the most unequivocal authorities in scripture; and warranted by the example of the most faithful and the holiest servants of Heaven. 1st. It was God himself who first directed man to reverence the Angels, as he thus addressed the Israelites through Moses:—‘Behold, I will send my angel, who shall go before thee, and keep thee in thy journey, and bring thee unto the place I have prepared. Take notice of him and hear his voice and do not think him one to be contemned, for he will not forgive when thou hast

---

\* δουλεία, service, an inferior kind of respect or homage.

sinned, and my name is in him.\* 2nd. We behold the patriarchs and the saints of old, bowing down before the angels and rendering them the most profound respect. Abraham on receiving the three angels into his tent, fell prostrate at their feet.† Lot, on seeing the two angels that came to Sodom, rose up, and went to meet them, and worshipped prostrate on the ground.‡ Josue displayed an equal reverence towards the angel-spirit whom he beheld, when ‘as he was in the field of the city of Jericho, he lifted up his eyes, and saw a man standing over against him, holding a drawn sword, and he went to him and said:—art thou one of ours, or of our adversaries? and he answered;—no, but I am prince of the host of the Lord, and now I am come. Josue fell on his face to the ground, and worshipping said; what saith my Lord to his servant? Loose, said he, thy shoes from off thy feet; for the place whereon thou standest is holy.’§

Protestants observe, to escape the pressure of these passages, that it was God himself, under the form of an angel, that appeared to these ancient saints on these several occasions. This is quite a gratuitous assumption, not warranted by any part of scripture, and directly contradicted by its internal evidence. God had never taught those ve-

---

\* *Exod. C. xxiii. V. 20, 21.*      † *Gen. C. xviii. V. 2.*

‡ *Gen. C. xix. V. 1.*      § *Josue, C. v. V. 13, 14, 15.*

nerable men to anticipate a visit from him in this manner; and the angels did not announce it: on the contrary, God suggested to them quite an opposite belief; for, first of all, he promises the Israelites that he will send his angel to precede them;\* then immediately declares that he himself will also go before them;† thus tracing out a marked distinction between his angels and Himself. The homage, therefore, that they exhibited to the angels, must have been intended for the angels as created beings and messengers of God, and not immediately for God himself. Again, the angel who spoke to Josue does not claim any attribute of the Godhead, but on the contrary, by declaring himself to be the prince of the host of the Lord, signifies, that he is not the Lord himself, but the servant, the mere minister of heaven. Moreover, in the Hebrew text of the quotations from the books of Genesis and Josue, whenever the deity is intended to be spoken of, the uncommunicable term—Jehovah,—in English—Lord,—is employed, as the appropriate name of God, and expressing a title of the divinity; when, however, the angels, and, consequently, creatures are mentioned, then the appellation with which Abraham, Lot, and Josue severally salute these messengers from heaven, is Adonai, likewise translated—Lord; a term applied to men, and employed here to indi-

---

\* *Exod. C. xxiii. V. 21.* † *Exod. C. xxxiii. V. 14, &c.*

cate that dignity, and delegated power with which creatures are invested.

The servant, who was sent by Abraham to bring home a wife for his son Isaac, thus prayed as he halted with his camels in the evening;—‘O Lord (Jehovah) the God of my master, or *Lord* (Adonai) Abraham,’ &c. The same servant when he found Rebecca, is described as having bowed himself down, and adored the Lord saying;—‘Blessed be the Lord (Jehovah) God of my master, or *Lord* (Adonai) Abraham.’\*

The substantive מַלְאָכִים, or messenger, the word, by which those spirits who visited the patriarchs and holy men of old, are designated, clearly indicates that they were not apparitions of the deity under human form, since God is not a messenger. Thus the sacred text expressly notifies that those angels, that appeared to Abraham and Lot, to Josue, to Balaam, and to Daniel, were mere creatures, who were honoured by men with a religious veneration, on account of him who sent them; and who accepted of such an inferior homage instead of refusing it, which they would have done, had it been unlawful. We may, likewise, be certain that these spirits were real and created beings, not visible manifestations of the Godhead under human form; since, on some occasions, two, on others, three angels appeared at the same time.

---

\* *Gen. C. xxiv. V. 26, 27.*

God would never have chosen to reveal himself in a manner most directly calculated to convey the notion that there was not one God but many Gods, an idea which the decalogue most studiously endeavoured to banish from among the Jews.

### III.—THE ANGELS AND SAINTS MAKE INTERCESSION FOR MEN.

That the angels and saints have manifested their concern for the spiritual happiness and earthly prosperity of men, is evident from scripture; independent of the proof to be deduced from the public and practical belief of the Church, and the doctrine of her pastors.

We gather from the prophecy of Zacharias, how earnestly the angel of the Lord interceded for the Jews;—‘ O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem, and on the cities of Juda, with which thou hast been angry ?\*’

The angel Raphael told Tobias;—‘ When thou didst pray with tears, and didst bury the dead... I offered thy prayers to the Lord †’

The angel ‡ (probably Gabriel) who came to make a revelation unto Daniel, thus addressed that prophet;—‘ But the prince of the kingdom of the Per-

\* *Zacharias*, C. i. V. 12.

† *Tobias*, C. xii. V. 12. For the Canonicity of this book, see Appendix II, at the end of the volume.

‡ Gabriel appeared twice before to Daniel. See C. viii. V. 16, C. ix. V. 21.

sians resisted me one and twenty days, and behold Michael one of the chief princes, came to help me, and I remained there by the king of the Persians.\*

The Psalmist, speaking of the man who dwelleth in 'the aid of the Most High,' attests that God 'hath given his angels a charge over thee; to keep thee in all thy ways.†

Jeremias announced to the Jews that the Lord had said;—'If Moses and Samuel shall stand before me, my soul is not towards this people.‡ God, therefore, must have given the Israelites to understand such was his wrath against them, that though Moses and Samuel were actually to intercede in their favour, still, he would cast them from his sight. That Moses and Samuel could, therefore, pray for the Jews;—that those holy men did pray for them, is positive, unless indeed we be willing to suppose that the Eternal Truth and Wisdom held out idle and unmeaning threats.

Judas Machabeus§ related a vision, in which he saw how 'Onias, who had been high priest, a good, and virtuous man, holding up his hands, prayed for the people of the Jews, and after this, there appeared also another man admirable for age and glory, and environed with beauty and majesty.

---

\* *Dan.C.x. V.13.* † *Psalm xc. V.11.* ‡ *Jeremias, C.x. V.1.*

§ For the canonicity of the books of Machabees, consult Appendix II.

Then Onias said ; this is a lover of his brethren, and of the people of Israel ; this is he that prayeth much for the people, and for all the holy city,—Jeremias the prophet of God.\*

Not only the Old, but the New Testament can bear witness to this doctrine. It was thus that our blessed Redeemer closed one of those parables which he delivered to the multitude;—‘Make unto you friends of the mammon of iniquity, that when you shall fail, they may receive you into everlasting dwellings.’† There is no one so ignorant as not to know that by the ‘mammon of iniquity,’ is signified riches.‡ Alms-deeds are, therefore, strongly recommended by our divine Redeemer in this passage ; and we are taught to secure the future friendship of the poor and indigent, by our munificence towards them at the present moment ; while we are instructed such will be the efficacy of our charities, that the poor, whom we are thus enabled to secure as friends, will have it in their power to serve us, after they have departed from this world, and become inhabitants of the everlasting dwellings of the heavenly kingdom where they will receive us, though we ourselves ‘should fail’ without their assistance. As only God is the distributor

---

\* 2 *Machabees*, C. xv. V. 12-14    † *St. Luke*, C. xvi. V. 9.

‡ Mammona apud Hebræos divitiæ appellari dicuntur ; convenit et Punicum nomen : nam lucrum Punice mammon dicitur.—*S. August. de Serm. Dom. Lib. ii.*

of grace, the orphan, the widow, and the miserable whom we have benefited by our alms on earth, possess no other means of rendering us a return for our liberality, than at present by offering up their petitions in our behalf to Christ, and making intercession for us, afterward in heaven, when they shall be among its blessed inhabitants.

St. John expressly tells us that the saints above, present our prayers before the mercy-seat, and thus become our intercessors. Whilst relating his vision of the heavenly Jerusalem, the beloved disciple describes how ‘the four and twenty Ancients fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of the saints.’\*

#### IV.—INFERRED FROM THE COMMUNION OF SAINTS IN THE APOSTLES’ CREED.

That the saints in heaven should intercede for us, their mortal brethren in the faith, is agreeable to reason as well as to religion.

1. How we can really believe, while we recite, that specific article of the creed which teaches a ‘communion of saints,’ without acquiescing in the truth of this assertion, would be difficult to explain. That this communion exists only between the faithful and the righteous upon earth, without comprehending the saints above within its limits, is dia-

---

\* *Apoc. C. v. V. 8.*



metrically opposed to the doctrine of St. Paul, who tells his Hebrew converts ;—‘ You are come to Mount Sion, and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to the company of many thousand angels, and to the Church of the first born, who are written in the heavens, and to God the judge of all, and to the spirits of the just made perfect.’\*

V.—FROM THE CHARITY WHICH ANIMATES THE SAINTS.

Charity is a virtue,—a principle of ardent love towards God, and goodwill to men, which unceasingly inclines such as are endowed with it, to glorify heaven, and to do good towards others. ‘ Charity never falleth away ;’† and, consequently, the saints above who are glowing with the purest—holiest fervour of this virtue, must not only love their brethren, whom they have left below, as they love themselves ; but also study how to procure for them a participation in that beatific happiness which they themselves are enjoying. The only way they can command, of effectually contributing to realize the desires of their charity, is prayer, through which they intercede in our behalf. The man who refuses to acknowledge, that among the spirits of the blessed, such interest is taken about mortals, surely entertains no very exalted opinion concerning the intenseness and extent of

---

\* *Heb. C. xii. V. 22, 23.*

† *1 Cor. C. xv. V. 8.*

action belonging to that celestial charity which animates the inhabitants of heaven ; at the same time that he tacitly, though necessarily admits, that the influence of this love of our neighbour, can be, since it has been, exerted in a more praiseworthy manner, even by the damned themselves, than by the blessed spirits.—‘ The rich man died, and was buried in hell ; and addressing himself to Abraham, he said : Father, I beseech thee, that thou wouldest send Lazarus to my father’s house, for I have five brethren, that he may testify unto them lest they also come unto this place of torments.’\* This single authority from scripture would warrant the docile peruser of its sacred contents, to presume that the saints in heaven feel for the living, quite as much charity as any damned soul in hell can possibly experience ; and therefore as Dives interceded for his brethren, so Abraham, and Lazarus, and all the saints continually present their prayers, with unwearied charity, in behalf of every true believer.

Having proved that the angels and saints do interest themselves in our behalf by praying for us, we will now proceed to establish by an appeal to the sacred volume, that, on our part, it is good and profitable, suppliantly to invoke the angels, and the saints ; and to have recourse to their prayers and assistance.

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xvi. V. 22, 27, 28.*

VI.—THE INVOCATION OF ANGELS PROVED FROM SCRIPTURE,—FROM THE PSALMS,—FROM GENESIS,—FROM THE APOCALYPSE.

While reading the Psalms, every one must be struck with those beautiful invocations to the angels uttered by the royal prophet. ‘Bless the Lord,’ he exclaims, ‘all ye angels; you that are mighty in strength, bless the Lord, all ye his hosts, you ministers of his that do his will.’\* David was aware that the sun, and moon, and stars, and other portions of inanimate nature, could neither hear his voice, nor chant the praises of the Creator; but he knew that the angelic spirits were hovering around him, and capable of mingling their songs of jubilation with his own; for he assures us that ‘the angels of the Lord shall encamp round about them that fear him.†—God hath given his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.’‡

Just before his death, the patriarch Jacob, after he had called upon God in favour of the two sons of Joseph, Manasses and Ephraim,—thus invoked an angel’s benediction over them.—‘The angel that delivered me from all evils, bless these boys.’§ Jacob consequently addressed a prayer of intercession to an angel.

\* *Psalm* cii. *V.* 20, 21. Protest. version—ciii. *V.* 20, 21.

† *Psalm* xxxiii. *V.* 8. Protest. version—xxxiv. *V.* 7.

‡ *Psalm* xc. *V.* 11. Protest. version—xci. *V.* 11.

§ *Gen. C.* xlviii. *V.* 16.

That the charitable assistance of the angels may be lawfully requested by the true believer, is evident from the words and the example of an Evangelist. St. John, in writing to the seven Churches, greets them in the following manner ;—‘ Grace be unto you from the seven spirits, which are before the throne ;’\*—a form of benediction which, while it assures us, that we may have recourse with much profit to the kind entreaties of the spirits which stand around the Majesty of heaven, in order to obtain grace, the spiritual gift of God ; at the same time exhibits an example for our imitation : for the Apostle, by desiring that grace might flow from the seven spirits, assuredly invoked them to obtain, by their entreaties, such a favour from Him, before whose throne they were ; since God only, is the author and distributor of grace.

#### VII.—INVOCATION OF SAINTS PROVED FROM SCRIPTURE.

Those several extracts from the holy scriptures, that constitute such an immoveable foundation for establishing the doctrine of the invocation of angels, are equally available as a solid basis to uphold the invocation of saints.

This is obvious from many other portions of the holy volume. Christ himself assures us that the saints in heaven ‘ are equal to angels, and are the children of God.’† Like the angels, they receive a power over the kingdoms of the earth, and their

---

\* *Apoc. C. i. V. 4.*

† *St. Luke, C. xx. V. 36.*

inhabitants; for our blessed Redeemer thus declares;—‘He that shall overcome, and keep my works, I will give him power over the nations;’\*—and it is observed by St. Paul; that—‘We see now through a glass in an obscure manner; but then, face to face. Now,’ says the Apostle, ‘I know in part; but then I shall know, even as I am known.’† The language of St. John is still more remarkable, for he says;—‘Dearly beloved, we are now the sons of God; and it hath not appeared what we shall be. We know that when he shall appear, we shall be like to him; because we shall see him as he is.’‡ The power, therefore, and the knowledge, with which the angels are endowed, and the same solicitude and charity for man which animate them, are equally attributable to the saints, who are now enjoying the beatific vision with the angel spirits, and participate with them in all the privileges of heaven,—discharge the same kind offices of brotherly affection towards us poor mortals, and are equally entitled to receive the tribute of our honour and our reverence; and like them may be profitably invoked to assist us by their intercession at the throne of mercy.

VIII.—HOLY MEN HAVE, EVEN IN THIS LIFE, BEEN  
INVOKED BY OTHERS.

It is an occurrence, which is very often noticed

---

\* *Apoc. C. ii. V. 26.*

† *1 Cor. C. xiii. V. 12.*

‡ *St. John, Epist. 1, C. iii. V. 2.*

in the Old, as well as the New Testament, that the servant of God who had rendered himself conspicuous for his virtues and his piety, was, whilst living, continually solicited by his admiring brethren to intercede with heaven in their favour. Thus it was that the children of Israel entreated holy Samuel;—‘Cease not to cry to the Lord our God for us that he may save us out of the hands of the Philistines.’\* The Lord himself directed Eliphaz, and Baldad, and Sophar, to go to his servant Job, and to request the favourite of heaven to pray for them.† With St. Paul, it was perpetually the practice to solicit a remembrance in the prayers of the faithful. ‘I beseech you brethren,’—writes the apostle of the Gentiles to the Romans—‘through our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the charity of the Holy Ghost, that you help me in your prayers for me to God.’‡ A similar request he urges in his Epistles to the Ephesians,§ to the Thessalonians,|| to the Colossians,¶ and to the Hebrews.\*\*

That the apostles were sedulous to discharge in their turn this debt of Christian kindness, which they so earnestly solicited from the charity of

---

\* 1 *Kings*. C. vii. V. 8. *Protest. Trans.* 1 *Samuel*.

† *Job*, xlii. V. 8.

‡ *Romans*, C. xv. V. 30.

§ *Ephes.* C. vi. V. 18, 19.

|| 1 *Thes.* C. v. V. 25, and 2 *Thess.* C. iii. V. 18.

¶ *Coloss.* C. iv. V. 3.

\*\* *Heb.* C. xiii. V. 18.

others for themselves, we may be certain, since St. Paul repeatedly announces to his converts, that he did not cease to pray for them ;\* and St. John reiterates the same assurance.† Whilst, therefore, the apostles and those who had been initiated into the mysteries of the Faith of Jesus by their labours, demonstrated in their daily practice, that they believed that the prayers of the ‘just man availeth much,‡ although in many things we all offend,§ and even the just man falleth seven times ;|| and if we say, we have no sin, we deceive ourselves ;¶ they must have been persuaded that the prayers of the saints above—of those who dwelt ‘in heaven where nought defiled can enter,’\*\* and where they do not—cannot fall into the very smallest sin, were gifted with far more efficacious virtues, and availed much more, than the prayers of any mortal being however righteous. Independently, therefore, of the doctrine of the infallible Church of Christ, that has invariably insisted on this dogma from the moment of her birth up to the present period, we may conclude from these various reflections, that we are as much authorized, at present, to beg of St. Peter, and St. Paul, and

---

\* *Col. C. i. V. 9, and 2 Thess. C. iii. V. 1.*

† *3 Epist. of St. John, C. i. V. 2.*

‡ *Epist. of St. James, C. v. V. 16.*     § *Ibid, C. iii. V. 2.*

|| *Prov. C. xxiv. V. 16.*     ¶ *St. John. 1 Epist. C. i. V. 7.*

\*\* *Apoc. C. xxi. V. 27.*

of every other saint, to pray for us, as was either of these glorious servants of the Lord to request that his fellow brethren should pray for him; or the primitive believers to supplicate their martyred teachers—those glorious apostles—to remember them in heaven, and to offer up their daily supplications in behalf of their necessities. Whole pages might be laden with weighty extracts from the writings of those early fathers who have so eloquently attested the belief of the apostolic times, concerning the invocation and intercession of the saints; and the reader who may wish to satisfy his curiosity on this portion of the subject, is referred to a learned work which has already been pointed out to his notice.\*

There are however two eminent early Christian writers, whose testimony on this and other points of doctrine is so lucid and conclusive, that they must not be passed by without being introduced to the acquaintance of the reader, whose attention will be again directed to them in other parts of

---

\* *Faith of Catholics on certain points of Controversy, confirmed by scripture and attested by the Fathers of the first five centuries, compiled by the Rev. Joseph Berington, and the Rev. John Kirk.*

Dr. Adam Clarke in his '*Concise View of the Succession of Sacred Literature*,' published in 1830, admits that Origen, a writer of the Greek Church, and who was born in the year 185, insists, in his treatise concerning prayer, on the mediation of saints in heaven.



the present volume. These writers are St. Paulinus of Nola,\* and Prudentius.† If the words or the fervent example of an enlightened and holy pastor of the Church, as far back as the closing of the fourth century, can produce any effect, then

---

\* Pontius Meropus Paulinus was born at Bourdeaux, in the year 358, and very early in life was selected to discharge the most dignified functions in the Roman Empire. In 393 he received the priesthood; and towards the end of the year 409, was elected to the episcopal chair of Nola. His literary acquirements were such that St. Jerom writes of him;—‘Every one admired the purity and elegance of his diction; the delicacy and elevation of his thoughts; the strength and sweetness of his style; and the playfulness of his imagination.—(*St. Hier. Epist.* 101, 102.) His works that have been hitherto collected, consist of letters, some of which are interspersed with original verses; of short poems mostly on religious subjects; and of hymns, or rather, birth-day odes, in honour of St. Felix, for whose memory Paulinus cherished the most devout respect.

† Aurelius Prudentius Clemens, who is justly regarded as the most eminent and elegant of the ancient Christian poets, was born in Spain in 348, (*Præf. in hymn in Cathemer. p. 1.*) at Calahorra in Old Castile. (*Hymn. 1. de Cor; et hymn. 18. V. 31.*) Twice was he honoured with the office of governor over certain provinces and cities in Spain. Though a particular favourite of the Emperor (Theodosius or Honorius), he quitted the imperial presence, to retire from the world. During a visit of devotion which he paid to Rome, he saw a great many martyrs’

must we acknowledge, not only that it is lawful to invoke the intercession of the saints departed ; but also admit that their prayers are highly available in our behalf. In his third ode in honour of his favourite patron St. Felix, after proclaiming the joy he felt at the annual celebration of his festival, the pious prelate thus addresses that saint and martyr ;—

Hic amor, hic labor est nobis ; hæc vota tuorum  
Suscipe, commendaque Deo, ut cum sedula cura,

\* \* \* \* \*

Quem bonitate pium, sed maiestate tremendum,  
Exora, ut precibus plenis meritisque redonet  
Debita nostra tuis, cum tu quoque magna piorum  
Portio regnantem Felix comitaberis Agnum :  
Posce ovium grege nos statui, ut sententia summi  
Iudicis hoc quoque nos iterum tibi munere donet  
Ne male gratatis lævos adjudicet hædos.

*Nat. iii. S. Felicis, V. 117, &c.*

---

tombs, at which he prayed for the cure of his spiritual wounds. Amongst his poems may be mentioned his *Psychomachia*, or combat of the soul against vice ; his *Cathemerinon*, or book of hymns ; his *Apotheosis*, or defence of the Deity, and the divine Attributes. But the most celebrated portion of the writings of Prudentius, is his book *Περὶ Στεφάνων*, or '*On the crowns of the Martyrs*' containing fourteen hymns. The works of this author have a particular value about them, for, independent of the charms of poetry, they testify the religious belief and practice of Spain and Italy, at the period when they were composed, by the peculiar and minute manner in which they describe the then existing ecclesiastical monuments and pious customs of the Christian world.

This is our labour, this our work of love,  
Receive our vows and offer them above.

\* \* \* \* \*

That God of fearful majesty whose sway  
Is mercy-guided, Felix, for us pray,  
That unto pray'rs and merits such as thine,  
For all our faults he would a pardon sign.  
And when to thee amid the sacred band  
'Tis giv'n around the spotless Lamb to stand,  
O sue that we amongst his sheep be plac'd,  
Not mid the banish'd left-hand goats disgrac'd;  
And thus shall we, a second time, be bless'd  
By heav'n's mild sentence, at thy kind behest.

In other odes composed in honour of the same  
St. Felix, Paulinus manifests his devotion to him  
in language equally clear and energetic; and de-  
clares how confident he feels of receiving benefit  
through that martyr's intercession;—

Concurramus ad hunc spe conspirante Patronum;  
Suscipiet nostras placida pietate querelas  
Et dum natalem ipsius celebramus ovantes  
Inque vicem flebit nobis, quia mente dicata  
Nos lætamur ei. Non est cura hæc nona sanctis  
Exorare Deum pro peccatoribus ægris.

*Nat. viii. V. 210, &c.*

With hope to him as patron let us fly,  
And, pity-touch'd, he'll list our plaintive cry;  
And as his feast we keep with holy rite,  
To our poor pray'rs his merits he'll unite.  
In sweet reverse for us he'll weep, the while  
We joy in him with souls devout, and smile:  
Unto the saints, 'tis not a recent care  
For sin-struck man to pour the pious pray'r.\*

---

\* Sentiments similar to these are expressed in the short  
consolatory poem which St. Paulinus addressed to Pneu-  
matius and Fidelis on the death of their son;—

Prudentius, by the sentiments of tenderest devotion which he has so happily interwoven with his verses, and the energetic language in which he gives expression to his homage, attests with a force as strong as that of St. Paulinus, his own and the age's belief in the invocation of saints. That such a credence was not peculiar to his particular nation, nor a novel fabrication of the times during which he lived, is certified by the triumphant manner in which the poet notices that the saints were recognized as the patrons of the world by every people professing Christianity, amongst whom, such as were induced at any period to supplicate their intercession, had experienced its efficacy. In his hymn in honour of the martyrs SS. Hymeterius and Celedonius, he says:—

Exteri necnon et orbis huc colonus advenit :  
 Fama nam terras in omnes percucurrit proditrix,  
 Hic patronos esse mundi, quos precantes ambient,  
 Nemo puras hic rogando frustra congessit preces ;  
 Laetus hinc tersis revertit supplicator fletibus,  
 Omne, quod justum poposcit, impetratum sentiens.  
 Tanto pro nostris periclis cura suffragantium est,

---

Sed tamen et nobis poterit tua gratia longum  
 Vivere, si nostri sis memor ad Dominum.

\* \* \* \* \*

Celse, juva fratrem socia pietate laborans,  
 Ut vestra nobis sic locus in requie.

\* \* \* \* \*

Innocuisque pares meritis peccata parentum  
 Infantes castis vincite suffragiis.

\* \* \* \* \*

Ut precibus commune tuis miserante habeamus  
 Præsidium Christo nos quoque, Celse, tui.

*De obitu Celsi, ad Pneu. in fine.*

Non sinunt, inane ut ullus voce murmur fuderit :  
 Audiunt, statimque ad aurem regis æterni ferunt.  
 Inde larga fonte ab ipso dona terris influunt :  
 Supplicum causas petitis quæ medelis irrigant.  
 Nil suis bonus negavit Christus unquam testibus :  
 Testibus, quos nec catenæ, dura nec mors terruit  
 Unicum deum fateri sanguinis dispendio :  
 Sanguinis sed tale damnum lux rependit longior.

*Hymn. 1, Perist. V. 10, &c.*

The stranger hither hies with pious haste,  
 For sounding fame all earth around has pac'd,  
 And told, the patrons of the world were here,  
 That we should, trusting, supplicate their pray'r.  
 For man these advocates ne'er came to try,  
 But home return'd with joy-enkindled eye  
 And tears dried up—to tell to all around  
 His just request was with a blessing crown'd.  
 Such, 'gainst our evils, is their saintly care,  
 No plaints we sigh are wasted on the air ;  
 But straight they heed them ;—hurrying they bring  
 Our supplications to the heav'nly King ;  
 From whose deep fountains, copious blessing flows,  
 And yields a cure to every suppliant's woes :  
 For nought has bounteous Christ e'er yet denied  
 To pray'r of martyrs,—saints who've testified  
 The true belief in one eternal God,  
 In galling fetters, 'neath the faying rod,  
 While fiercest death stood by with brandish'd dart ;  
 Then wrung the life-blood from the fearless heart.\*

---

\* Prudentius has repeatedly mentioned, in various other parts of his poems, the then prevailing religious practice of invoking the aid of the saints; and has eloquently asserted the efficacy of their intercession in behalf of those who address themselves to their fraternal charity. The invocation of saints is clearly pointed out in the following verses:—

Adesto nunc, et percipe  
 Voces precantum supplices,

IX.—INVOCATION OF SAINTS IN THE PRIMITIVE CHURCH  
PROVED FROM ANCIENT INSCRIPTIONS.

In favour of the belief and practice of the Invocation of Saints by the primitive Church, there

---

Nostri reatus efficax  
Orator ad thronum Patris.  
\* \* \* \* \*  
Miserere nostrarum precum  
Placatus ut Christus suis  
Inclinet aurem prosperam  
Noxas nec omnes imputet.

*Hymn. v. Perist. V. 545, et seq.*

Talking of the tomb of St. Agnes at Rome, he says ;—

Servat salutem virgo Quiritium :  
Necnon et ipsos protegit advenas,  
Puro, ac fideli pectore supplices.

*Hymn. xiv. Perist. V. 5.*

In noticing the protection to be derived from the intercession of the saints, Prudentius gratefully observes of his own native city Calahorra ;—

O triplex honor, O triforme culmen,  
Quo nostræ caput excitatur urbis  
Cunctis urbibus eminens iberis !  
Exultare tribus libet patronis  
Quorum præsidio foveamur omnes  
Terrarum populi pyrenearum.

*Hymn. vi. Perist. V. 145.*

Le Clerc, an eminent French Protestant writer, passes the following remark upon the *Peristephanon* of Prudentius ;—‘ It is very evident from various passages in these hymns, that Christians invoked the martyrs at that period, and believed that they had been assigned by the Almighty as the especial patrons of some particular places. Certain

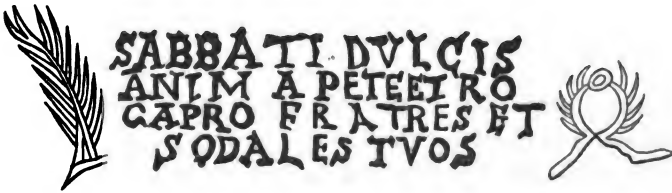
is a species of proof which has been seldom, perhaps never before, introduced to the notice of the English reader. The Roman catacombs are perpetually exhibiting such lucid evidence upon this article of apostolic doctrine, as to dispel the faintest shadow of doubt or uncertainty from about the subject. For whenever that burial-place of the primitive and persecuted witnesses to the faith is explored, it almost invariably happens that an inscription is discovered over some martyred saint, in which the prayers of the Christian champion who sleeps within, are desired by those who with religious reverence interred his mangled body, and composed his epitaph.\* In the year 1694 was discovered, in the cemetery of SS. Gordianus and

---

Protestant writers, who admit that along with the scripture should be united the tradition of the first four or five centuries, have denied that prayer was ever made to the saints up to the fourth age of the Church. They should, however, not have erected such an imaginary system, without having first of all investigated facts, since it is easy to refute their supposition by several parts of the writings of Prudentius.—*Le Clerc, Vie des Pères primitifs, in Prudentio.*

\* The religious zeal which prompted many of the faithful to expend large sums of money, and even risk their lives to rescue the bodies of the martyrs from insult; and to possess themselves even of the earth which was sprinkled with their blood, will be noticed in the next chapter, Num. 6, 7.

Epimachus,\* the grave of the holy martyr Sabbatius, along with the following inscription on a marble slab which closed up the oblong niche in the wall or sepulchre containing the martyr's bones.†



Sabbati Dulcis Anima Pete et Roga  
Pro Fratres (*sic*) et Sodales Tuos†

*O Sabbatius, sweet soul, petition and pray for  
Thy brethren and companions.*

---

\* This cemetery is on the Latin way, and about a mile from Rome.

† See a note to Num. 7, in the next chapter, for a description of the way in which the graves were made in the catacombs. Concerning these ancient cemeteries, the reader is referred to Appendix IV.

‡ Grammatical inaccuracies are of frequent occurrence in ancient inscriptions, hence we must not be surprised to find 'pro fratres' instead of 'pro fratribus' &c. This inscription was afterwards presented by Cardinal di Carpegna to the learned Florentine senator Buonarruoti, who has inserted it in his interesting work entitled '*Osservazioni sopra alcuni Frammenti di Vasi antichi di vetro*', where the reader may see it at p. 167. In the works of the poets and the orators of paganism, a palm-branch and wreath were emblematical of victory. The sacred wri-



The following sepulchral inscription was extracted from a tomb in the cemetery of Callistus :

ATTICE SPIRITVS TVS  
IN BONV ORA PRO PAREN  
TIBVS TVIS

*O Atticus, thy spirit is in good, pray for thy parents.\**

ters also have noticed the palm-branch as a symbol of the triumph gained by the martyr and the true believer; (*Apocal. c. vii. v. 9*) and the crown or garland as indicative of that eternal glory which the saints enjoy in heaven. (*Isaiah, c. xxviii. v. 5. 1 Cor. c. ix. v. 25. 2 Tim. c. iv. v. 8. Epist. of St. James, c. i. v. 12. 1 St. Peter, c. v. v. 4. Apocal. c. ii. v. 10.*) Hence it is that a palm-branch and a wreath of laurel are usually traced in the mortar, scratched on the tile, or sculptured on the marble slab, which may have been severally employed by the first Christians, to seal the martyrs' graves in the catacombs. Both these types of victory are mentioned by the Christian poet Prudentius, who lived so near to the times of persecution. In his hymn in honour of St. Vincent, he says of that illustrious martyr :—

'Tu solus, o his inclyte  
Solus brabii duplicis (*brabii pro bravii*)  
Palmam tulisti : tu duas  
Simul parasti laureas."

*Peristeph. Hymn. 5, v. 537.*

The palm-branch and the laurel-crown, which accompany the inscription, unitedly testify that Sabbatius was martyred for the faith.

\* Apud Muratorium in *Novo Thes. p. 1833, num. 6.*—Bianchini, in his learned work entitled, '*Demonstratio*

Another inscription, found in the cemetery of Cyriaca,\* is to a similar effect :

JOVIANE VIBAS IN DEO ET  
ROG (id est ROGA.)

In the cemetery of Priscilla† was discovered the following :

ANATOLIUS FILIO BENEMERENTI FECIT  
QUI VIXIT ANNIS VII. MENSIS VII. DIE  
BUS XX. IN SPIRITUS TVUS BENE REQUIES  
CAT IN DEO PETAS PRO SORORE TVA.

The two succeeding inscriptions were inedited until a few years ago, when they became the subject of a particular dissertation, and were published by an Italian antiquary.‡

SIMPLICIO  
VENEMEREN  
TI. FILIO. TE —  
IN PACEM  
P. T. PR. N. S.

that is :—

*Historiæ Ecclesiastice Quadripartitæ comprobatæ Monumentis,* places this inscription in the first table of the first century of the Christian Church.

\* This cemetery is on the Tyburtine way, and has its entrance at the Church of St. Laurence out of the Walls.

† This cemetery is on the Salarian way.

‡ *Intorno un' antico Marmo christiano, Lettera di Clemente Cardinali, Bologna, 1819.*

SIMPLICIO BENEMERENTI FILIO  
 (*Suscipiat*) TE (*Christus*) IN PACEM  
 PeTe PRo Nobis.\*

The second is preserved in the church of the Blessed Trinity at Velletri :

ANATOAICEMΩNHPΩTO  
 TOKONTEKNONOCTICH  
 MEINEΔOΘHCΠPOCΘAITON  
 XPONONYEYXOYΠEPHMΩN

*To Anatolius, our first begotten son, (thou) who  
 wast given to us for a short time, pray for us.*

The following inscription, which may be found inserted in the works of one of the most celebrated scholars in lapidary writing,† is equally demonstrative of the belief and practice of the primitive

\* In ancient inscriptions, the V is frequently substituted for B ; and to those who are anywise versed in the lapidary style of writing, it is well known, that very often words are so abbreviated, that their consonants only, sometimes no others than the first and last, are inscribed. —*Fabretti, Inscr. Domest. c. iii. p. 164, Mazzochi, de Epist. Hilarii. p. 11, in notis.*

† Gaetano Marini, who expended forty years in studying and transcribing the Christian inscriptions discovered in the Catacombs. Those valuable monuments of ecclesiastical antiquity, with others relating to the civil history of Pagan Rome, to the number of many thousands, were collected and classified by Marini, and now incrust the walls of the first corridor of the Vatican gallery. They form a body of documents which, to use the expression of Marini himself, ‘è una raccolta la più grande e la più dotta che sia al mondo.’—*Aned. di G. Marini, Roma, 1822.*

Church with regard to the invocation of departed saints :—

ROGES. PRO. NOBIS. QUIA. SCIMUS. TE. IN.  
CHRISTO.\*

At Rome, in 1758, in an excavation at the church of St. Agnes out of the walls, was discovered an epitaph composed by St. Damasus, who was elected Pope in 366, in honour of that youthful martyr and illustrious virgin. The pontiff concludes his verses with this invocation of St. Agnes :—

O VENERANDA MIHI SANCTUM DECUS ALMA PUDORIS  
UT DAMASI PRECIB | FAVEAS PRECOR INCLYTA  
MARTYR.†

The following inscription records a vow discharged by the religious empress Galla Placidia and her children, towards the year 440, when, as it would appear, the imperial family experienced the efficacy of the intercession made in their behalf during a tempest at sea, by St. John the Evangelist.

SANCTO AC BEATISSIMO APOSTOLO  
JOANNI EVANGELISTÆ  
GALLA PLACIDIA AUGUSTA  
CUM FILIO SUO PLACIDIO VALENTINIANO  
AUGUSTO  
ET FILIA SUA JUSTA GRATA HONORIA  
AUGUSTA  
LIBERATIONIS PERICULO MARIS  
VOTUM SOLVIT.‡

---

\* Marini, *Iscrizioni Albane*, p.37: and *Fr. Arvali*, p.266.

† *Apud Marangonium in Appen. ad Act. S. Victor*, p. 138.

‡ *Ravennæ, in Eccles. S. Joannis Evangel. apud Muratorium*, p. 1878.

## X.—INVOCATION OF SAINTS IN THE ANGLO-SAXON CHURCH.

It will not, the writer presumes, be considered by the British reader as an intrusion on his patience, if a few extracts from an elegant and learned work on our native history,\* be presented to his notice, in proof of the perfect conformity in belief and practice concerning the Invocation of Saints, which subsists between the Anglo-Saxons and the present Catholic inhabitants of the British Islands.

‘But a short acquaintance with ancient literature,’ observes Dr. Lingard, ‘will prove, that our ancestors were too well instructed to confound man with God. They knew how to discriminate between the adoration due to the Supreme Being, and the honours which might be claimed by the most holy among his servants: and while they worshipped Him as the author of every blessing, they paid no other respect to them than what was owing to those whom they considered as *his* favourites, and *their* advocates. Whoever shall attentively peruse the works of the Saxon writers, or the acts of the Saxon councils, from the era of their conversion to what is deemed the darkest period of their history, will observe this important distinction accurately marked and constantly inculcated.

---

\* *The Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church*, by J. Lingard, D.D.

When the poet sang the praises of his patron, he sought neither to interest his mercy, nor deprecate his justice : to obtain the assistance of his intercession, to be remembered by him at the throne of the Almighty, was the sole object of his petition.\* If the preacher from the pulpit exhorted his hearers to solicit the prayers of their more holy brethren, he was careful to inculcate, that they should adore God alone, as their true Lord and true God.† If the Christian, when he rose from his bed, was accustomed to beg the protection of the saints, he was yet commanded in the first place to worship with bended knees the majesty of his Creator.‡

---

\* See Alcuin's *Address to the Virgin Mary* :

Tu mundi vitam, totis tu gaudia sæclis,  
 Tu regem cæli, tu dominum atque Deum  
 Ventris in hospitio genuisti, virgo perennis  
 Tu precibus nobis auxiliare tuis.

*Alcuin. apud Can. tom. ii. pars ii. p.471.*

Also *S. Aldhelm de Virgin. Bib. Pat. tom. viii. p. 22*, and *Bede Vit. S. Cuthb. p. 291*.

† The Saxon Homilist is very accurate in his expressions:—‘ Him alone shall we adore. He alone is true Lord and true God. We beg the intercession of holy men that they would intercede for us to their Lord and our Lord. But nevertheless we do not pray to them as we do to God.’ (*Homil. Sax. apud Whel. p. 283.*) ‘ Nulli martyrum,’ says the manuscript quoted above, ‘ sacrificamus, quamvis in memoriis martyrum constituamus altaria.’—*Ibid.*

‡ ‘ Having worshipped his Creator alone, let him invoke

These distinctions were too easy to be mistaken. The idea of intercession necessarily includes that of dependence : and to employ the mediation of his favourites, is to acknowledge the superior excellency of the Deity.\*

XI.—CONTAINED IN ALL THE LITURGIES.

The unhesitating belief of our Anglo-Saxon ancestors in the intercession of the saints, and the religious ardour with which, as is attested by a variety of monuments, they invoked their prayers, demonstrate the genuineness of their religious credence, and its consequent identity with that of the universal Church, whether in the east or west, on this important article of faith. That such a doctrine was in fact most studiously inculcated by the Apostles and their immediate successors, may be readily ascertained by referring to the liturgies that have been in use from time immemorial in

---

God's saints, and pray that they would intercede for him to God ; first to holy Mary, and then all the saints of God.—*Lib. Leg. Eccles. apud Wilk. p. 272.*

\* Thus, in the Saxon homilies, the preacher points out the difference between the intercession of the saints and the mediation of Christ, when he exhorts his auditory to solicit the intercession of the Virgin Mary, with Christ her Son, her Creator, and her Redeemer.—*Serm. in Annunc. St. Marizæ, apud Wanley, p. II.* See the '*Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church*,' p. 279-280.

those several Churches, which those first preachers of the Gospel, or their immediate disciples, founded.\*

## XII.—OBJECTIONS ANSWERED.

If it be idle or illicit to call upon the saints to pray for us, then the impropriety and unlawfulness of our invocations must arise from some of the following causes; namely, the unwillingness and incapability of the saints to pray for us; or, because they cannot hear our prayers; and even, though they could, the offering of them up would be an injury perpetrated against the Godhead, and a particular derogation from the mediatorship of Jesus Christ.

## XIII.—CHARITY ENGAGES THE SAINTS TO PRAY FOR US.

I. With respect to the unwillingness of the saints to present our petitions at the throne of mercy, we cannot for a single moment contemplate even the possibility of its existence: for though faith shall have a termination when we shall see God as he is;† though hope will one day win the object of its longings;‡ charity never falleth away,§

---

\* Extracts from the Liturgies in use throughout the East, are given in Appendix II.

† *St. John, C. iii. V. 2.*

‡ ‘But hope that is seen is not hope. For what a man seeth, why doth he hope for?’—*Rom. C. viii. V. 24.*

§ *1 Cor. C. xiii.*



but glows brighter and purer, and acts more unceasingly within the bosom of the saint in heaven, than in the breast of the most righteous man that ever lived upon earth.

If, therefore, charity impels each Christian, whose pretensions to piety are of the very humblest order, inwardly to remember his brethren, his friends, and all fellow-creatures, in his daily prayers; the same virtues must possess an impulse incomparably more active in stimulating the blessed souls in heaven, to intercede for those whom they have left upon earth.

XIV.—THEY HAVE THE POWER OF DOING IT.

II. Concerning their ability to perform this charitable office for us, it is to be observed, that if the saints, while they themselves were wanderers in the desert of this world, could present their supplications to Almighty God in our behalf, it is inconceivable why they cannot exercise the same kindness, now that they have entered into the enjoyment of the promised land of heaven; and how, in the plenitude of their actual happiness, the power of doing good, and of moving according to the spirit of God's own love, should be circumscribed within much more narrow limits than what were assigned for its action while on earth.

XV.—THEY KNOW WHAT PASSES UPON EARTH.

III. But, perhaps, it may be argued that they

do not know what passes here below, and therefore, as they cannot hear our prayers, it is consequently useless for us to beg their intercession. What authority have those who differ from the Catholic Church, for such an objection? None whatever; for instead of being warranted by any passage in the Scriptures, or countenanced by reason, it is, on the contrary, most easily removed by calling in the aid of Scripture and reason. If it be asserted that the saints of themselves, or by any quality inherent in their nature, cannot hear our prayers, nor penetrate the secret enclosure of our hearts to read the thoughts and watch the motions that are stirring there, we most readily assent to such a declaration: but this does not overthrow the dogma respecting the prayers of the saints. To accomplish this, it must be demonstrated that Almighty God cannot impart to them such a knowledge: to refuse, however, to recognise such a power in the Deity would be blasphemous. God has communicated to the prophets the knowledge of events that were not to happen for many hundred years. Eliseus witnesses, as though he were personally present, the scene that takes place between Giezi and the Syrian general Naaman;—‘Was not my heart present when the man turned back from his chariot to meet thee? So now thou hast received money, and received garments, &c. . . . But the leprosy of Naaman shall

also stick to thee and to thy seed for ever.\* The same prophet was acquainted with what passed in the council-chamber of the Syrian king, who imagined that some amongst his friends had betrayed his secret confidence ;—‘ And calling together his servants, he said : Why do ye not tell me who it is that betrays me to the king of Israel ? and one of his servants said : No one, my Lord, O King, but Eliseus the prophet, that is in Israel, telleth the king of Israel all the words that thou speakest in thy privy-chamber.’†

To St. Peter was revealed the deception of Ananias and Sapphira.‡ Surely, if the Divine Being could convey to his servants while on earth a perfect knowledge of transactions which eye could not see, nor of which the ear could receive the faintest information ; he must be equally able to impart similar communications unto the spirits of the blessed, who are now much more susceptible of receiving these revelations. It was from afar off, from hell itself, that the rich man put up his prayer to Abraham : but neither the great chaos which was fixed between them, nor the difference of place and state, prevented that holy patriarch from hearing, and replying to the supplication.§

---

\* 4 *Kings*, C. v. V. 26-27, (Protest. Vers. 2 *Kings*.)

† 4 *Kings*, C. vi. V. 11-12.      ‡ *Acts*, C. v. V. 3.

§ *St. Luke*, C. xvi. V. 24-25.

If a prayer can be heard in limbo from the depths of hell, assuredly our petitions can penetrate from earth to heaven. Abraham, moreover, was aware that Moses and the prophets had existed, and had put on record the laws and admonitions of Almighty God :\* the same omnipotence that communicated this to Abraham, imparts to his blessed servants a knowledge of those prayers addressed to them by mortals here on earth. This will enter more readily into our conception, when we call to our remembrance, that now the saints possess advantages which were not enjoyed by Abraham while in limbo ; for they are installed in the actual fruition of beatific glory—are in heaven, and see God face to face. Our divine Redeemer assures us that there shall be joy in heaven upon one sinner that doth penance :† but who are they who participate in this holy jubilation ? the whole court of heaven ; and consequently the saints as well as the angels, the universal body of the citizens belonging to the celestial Jerusalem : no one is excepted, and no one can : for we are told by Christ himself, that the saints in glory are like to the angels.‡ The brightest angels have not a peculiar faculty or power by which they can ascertain what passes or is said on earth, independent of the interposition of the Deity : how, therefore, do they

---

\* *St. Luke, C. xvi. V. 29.*      † *Ibid. C. x. V. 7.*

‡ *St. Matt. C. xxii: V. 30, & St. Luke, C. xx. V. 36.*

become acquainted with the sinner's repentance? Whatever medium the Protestant assigns for the conveyance of terrestrial knowledge to the angels, the Catholic will ascribe as the method by which the saints become informed of our requests to engage their prayers and supplication in our favour.

XVI.—THEIR INTERCESSION NOT DEROGATORY TO THE  
MEDIATORSHIP OF CHRIST.

IV. But it will be further objected, that although the saints may be able to hear our invocations, still it is injurious to the mediatorship of Christ to call upon them. In reply, the Catholic observes, that he by no means elevates the saints whom he calls upon, to the dignity of mediators of redemption, or distributors of graces : he merely invokes their charity ; he solicits them to be the bearers of his supplications to the throne of his and their Saviour Jesus, the true—the one—the only mediator of redemption : he attests how earnestly studious the Church is in teaching the unlawfulness of asking anything of the saints as if they were the authors of divine benefits, and the dispensators of glory and of grace, or could impart to us any of the means required for securing our salvation. He illustrates this portion of the creed of his Church by a reference to the formularies of public prayer which she employs in her services, and to those authentic and doctrinal expositions which she exhibits as the standard of her faith.

## XVII.—MANNER OF ADDRESSING GOD THROUGH THE SAINTS.

The form of prayer used in the solemn and public worship of the Church, will, in the clearest manner, testify her doctrine on the invocation of saints.\* Throughout the Missal,† and the Breviary,‡ there is not one single prayer, or collect, addressed to any saint whatever: but every one of them is directed to God alone. They begin with one or other of the following invocations to the Deity :—‘*Omnipotens sempiterne Deus*,’ &c.—Almighty, eternal God :—‘*Intercessio nos quæsumus Domine*’—May the intercession, O Lord, &c.:—‘*Præsta quæsumus omnipotens Deus*’—Grant, O Almighty God, &c. They end with this conclu-

---

\* Pope St. Cælestinus, who ascended the pontifical throne, in the year 431, observes, in his letter to the bishops of Gaul ;—*Obsecrationum sacerdotalium sacramenta respiciamus, quæ ad Apostolos tradita in toto mundo atque in omni Catholica Ecclesia uniformiter celebrantur, ut legem credendi lex statuat supplicandi.*

† An appellation given to the volume which contains the Liturgy of the Mass, together with the whole order of divine service to be celebrated on the Sundays, Festivals, and Saints’ days throughout the year.

‡ A book which contains the form of daily office or devotion, to be recited in public or private by every Catholic minister from the moment he is initiated into holy orders, until the hour of his death. Such a duty is equally incumbent on the pope, as well as the humblest sub-deacon.

sion :—‘ Through our Lord Jesus Christ, thy Son. The following strophe includes the sense of these lines in which each anthem chanted in the public office, closes.

In this, most gracious Father, hear,  
With Christ thy equal Son, our pray'r,  
Who with the Holy Ghost and Thee  
Resides and reigns eternally. Amen.

XVIII.—SIMILARITY OF CATHOLIC AND PROTESTANT PRAYERS.

Whoever will take the trouble to compare the collects appointed to be read during the service of the Church of England, on all Sundays of the year, with the collects that are set down in the Roman Missal, for the same occasions, will be probably surprised to discover such a perfect accordance between them, in almost every instance, as to convince him that the ‘ Book of Common Prayer ’ is indebted to the Mass of the Catholic Church, for every beautiful invocation to the Deity. The coincidence is peculiarly observable on the feast of St. Michael and all angels, when Protestants employ a prayer the very same in sense, and a literal translation of the collect which the Catholic Church recites upon the same occasion.\*

---

\* ORATIO.

Deus, qui miro ordine angelorum ministeria hominumque dispensas; concede propitius: ut a quibus tibi ministrantibus in cœlo semper assistitur, ab his in terrâ vita nostra muniatur. Per Dominum nostrum, &c.

Though the Christian possesses only one Mediator of redemption, Christ Jesus, who alone has reconciled us through his precious blood,\* and after having wrought the work of our redemption, and having 'entered once into the Holy of Holies,'† always lives to make intercession for us;‡ it does not by any means follow as a necessary consequence, that it is unlawful to solicit the intercession of angels and the saints; for were it so, neither St. Paul would have recommended himself with so much earnestness to the prayers of the brethren on earth;§ nor would St. James have thus exhorted us to 'pray for one another that you may be saved;'|| for assuredly the prayers of a mortal man upon earth, however just and pure he may be from human imperfections, must derogate from the glory of Jesus as our Mediator, and deteriorate the price he paid for our redemption, quite as much as the intercession of the glorified spirits in heaven. The Apostles did not consider it to be injurious to the

---

FROM THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.

O everlasting God, who hast ordained and constituted the services of angels and men in a wonderful order; mercifully grant, that as the holy angels always do thee service in heaven, so by thy appointment they may *succour* and *defend us* on earth: through Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

\* 1 *Tim. C. ii. V. 5.* † *Heb. C. ix. V. 12.* ‡ *Heb. C. vii. V. 25.*

§ *Rom. C. xv. V. 30 & Heb. C. xiii. V. 18.* || *St. James, C. v. V. 16.*



mediatorship of Christ to ask the saints to pray for them ; why therefore should we ?

**XIX.—INCONSISTENCY OF SUCH AN OBJECTION.**

Men of every religious denomination are mutually solicitous to obtain the prayers of one another ; and they do not hesitate to promise or request this reciprocity of Christian brotherhood ; but what are we ? Alas, the best among us are poor miserable creatures, with a load of sins and imperfections on our shoulders ; and yet, many will request the prayers of each other without scruple, at the same instant that they would regard it as a heinous crime to beg the intercession of the pure and spotless saints in heaven ; and pronounce it injurious to the mediatorship of Jesus, to address to his chosen faithful servants, who now wear robes of glory brilliant and purple with his saving blood, the self same invocations—the identical requests, they make to sinners.

It is difficult to conceive how a rational and thinking Protestant can possibly object to that relative and inferior honour which Catholics exhibit towards the saints, when he himself is punctual in observing certain rites and ceremonies which cannot be ultimately referable to anything but this same practice.

1. There is scarcely one Protestant church, of however modern erection, which is not dedicated to God under the appellation of some peculiar

saint : for one sacred edifice which bears the title of the Trinity, there are a hundred denominated after St. Mary, St. Peter, or St. Paul.

2. In the ritual of the Church of England, certain days are appointed for the especial celebration of festivals in honour of the saints, when their names are introduced with all becoming reverence in the collect of the day.\*

3. Instead of selecting an adjunct to his surname from the catalogue of heathen worthies, the Protestant assumes at baptism the appellation of some saint, and thus in imitation of the Catholic, manifests his preference as well as reverence towards the glorified inhabitants of the heavenly Jerusalem.

We will close our observations on this subject by a concise though comprehensive abstract of the Catholic doctrine on the Intercession and Invocation of the saints, furnished by a work of public authority in the Church, the Catechism of the Council of Trent, which says:—‘ We do not ad-

---

\* Such for instance are St. Andrew's day, the feast of St. Thomas the Apostle, the conversion of St. Paul, the Presentation of Christ in the Temple, or the Purification of the Virgin Mary, St. Matthias's day, the Annunciation of the blessed Virgin Mary, St. Mark's day, St. Philip and St. James's day, St. Barnabas the Apostle, St. John Baptist's day, St. Peter's day, St. James the Apostle, St. Bartholomew the Apostle, St. Matthew the Apostle, St. Michael and all angels, St. Luke the Evangelist, St. Simon and St. Jude Apostles, and All Saints' day.

dress God and the saints in the same manner : God we implore to grant us the blessings of which we stand in need, and to deliver us from the dangers to which we are exposed ; but the saints, because they are the friends of God, we solicit to undertake the advocacy of our cause with him, to obtain for us from him, all necessities for soul and body. Hence, we make use of two different forms of prayer : to God, we properly say ; ‘ *have mercy on us,—hear us.* ’ but to the saints ; ‘ *pray for us.* ’ The words, ‘ have mercy on us,’ we may also address to the saints, for they are most merciful ; but we do so on a *different principle* ; we beseech them to be touched with the misery of our condition, and to interpose, in our behalf, their influence and intercession before the throne of God. In the performance of this duty, it is strictly incumbent on all, not to transfer to creatures, the right which belongs exclusively to God : and when kneeling before the image of a saint, we repeat the Lord’s Prayer, we are also to recollect, that we beg of the saint to pray *with us*, and to obtain for us those favours which we ask of God, in the petitions of the Lord’s Prayer ; in fine, that he becomes our interpreter and intercessor with God. That this is an office which the saints discharge we read in the Apocalypse.\*

---

\* Catechism of the Council of Trent, translated by the Rev. J. Donovan, 1829, p. 467.







